

# French Grammar Self-Taught

BY

J. LAFFITTE, B.-ès-L.,

*Principal French Master, City of London School.*



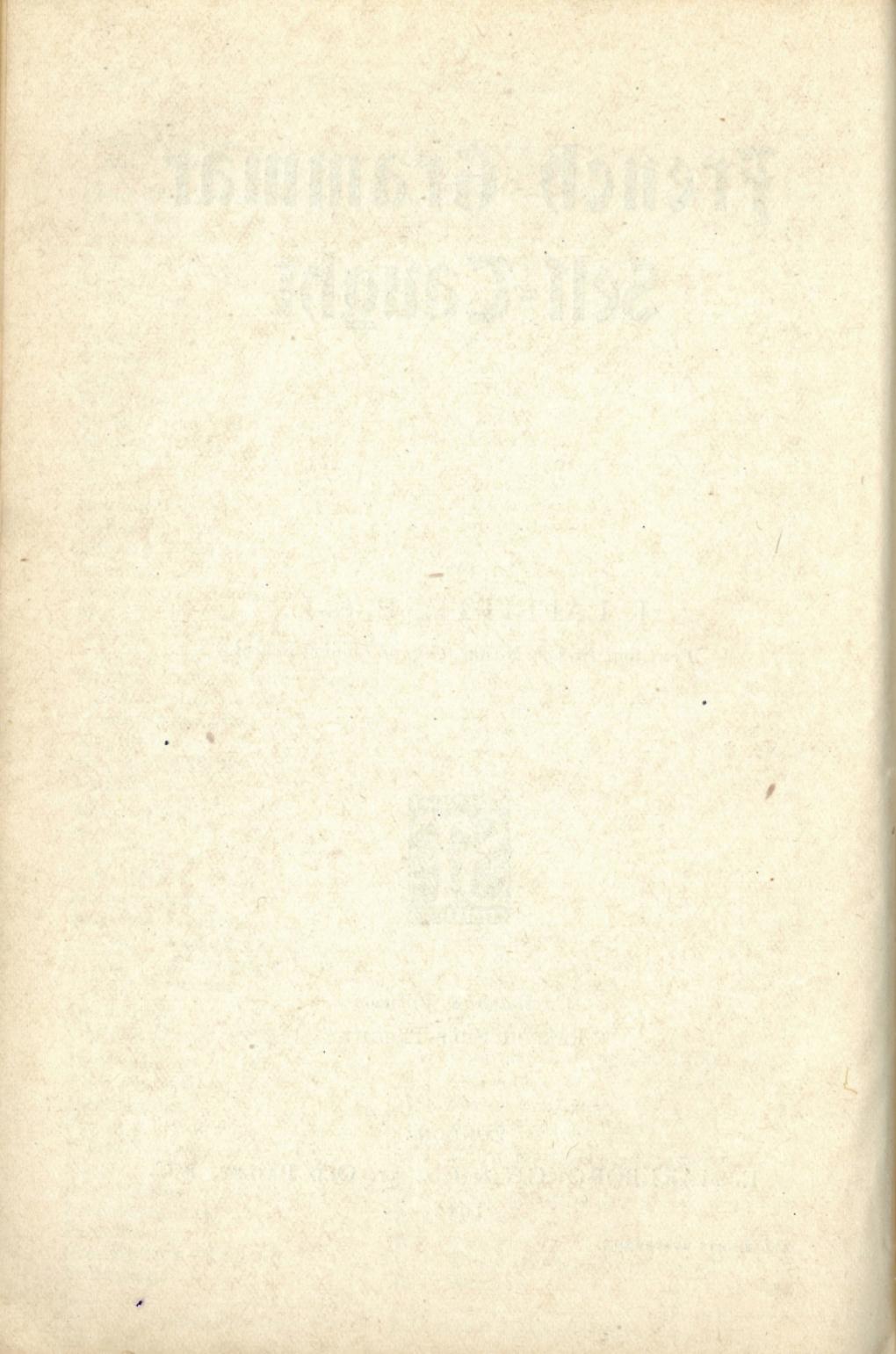
*Companion Volume  
“FRENCH SELF-TAUGHT.”*

LONDON :

E. MARLBOROUGH & Co., 51, OLD BAILEY, E.C.

1912,

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.]



## PREFACE.

---

THIS volume contains the essential elements of French Grammar, and is written mainly in view of the needs of students who have not the opportunity of availing themselves of tutorial assistance.

The characteristic features of the book are :

A clear and definite statement of the grammatical rules, and avoidance of vague and indefinite expressions.

The free introduction of model sentences, illustrative of the rules, which guide the student in doing the exercises in translation.

Exercises based upon the rules, and consisting of sentences of a useful and practical character.

Frequent directions to the student as to the best mode of procedure.

A Key to the Exercises is published separately.

The student will do well to learn the rules thoroughly as he proceeds, committing the examples to memory as well as the words required for each exercise, to write the exercises with care, checking them by means of the Key, and to re-write them after noting the points in which he has been in error.

In this way, by the time he has worked through the book, the student will possess a fair knowledge of Grammar and be able to read French of ordinary difficulty, at first with the help of a Dictionary, and later at sight. He is also referred to *French Self-Taught*,\* which supplies abundant vocabularies and conversational matter, with the phonetic pronunciation of the French words throughout.

J. L.

London, 1912.

\* FRENCH SELF-TAUGHT (Thimm's System). Classified Vocabularies and Conversations, with Phonetic Pronunciation. Enlarged edition. Revised by J. LAFFITTE, B.-és-L., Principal French Master, City of London School, London, E.C. In red cloth, 3/- net; blue wrapper, 1/9 net. LONDON : E. MARLBOROUGH & Co.

## CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTION: The Alphabet ; Accents ...</b>	7
The Apostrophe; Hyphen; Diæresis; Cedilla; Tonic Accent; Liaison ...	8
<b>CHAPTER</b>	
I. The Definite Article ...	10
The Indefinite Article ; the Partitive Article	12
Use of the Definite Article ; Remarks on the Indefinite Article ...	14
II. Gender of Substantives ...	16
III. Plural of Substantives and Adjectives ...	16
IV. The Adjective ...	20
Agreement of the Adjective ...	20
Feminine of Nouns and Adjectives ...	20
V. Place of Adjectives ...	25
VI. Degrees of Comparison ...	27
Irregular Comparison (§36) ...	29
VII. Possessive Adjectives ...	30
VIII. Demonstrative Adjectives ...	31
IX. Numeral Adjectives ; Cardinal Numbers ...	32
Notes on the Cardinals ...	33
Notes on the Ordinals ...	35
The Days of the Week and the Months of of the Year ; The Seasons ...	36
Age ; The Time of Day ...	37
Fractions ; Dimensions ; Collectives ...	38
Arithmetical Phrases ...	39
X. Personal Pronouns ...	40
Conjunctive Pronouns ...	41
Disjunctive Pronouns ...	43
XI. Possessive Pronouns ...	45
XII. Demonstrative Pronouns ...	46

## CONTENTS.

3

CHAPTER	PAGE
XIII. Relative Pronouns ... ... ...	48
XIV. Interrogative Adjectives and Pronouns ...	51
XV. Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns ...	53
Notes on the Indefinite Adjectives & Pronouns	55
<b>XVI. VERBS.</b>	
Stem ; Termination ; Moods ... ...	57
Conjugations ; Tenses ... ...	58
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs <i>Avoir</i> and <i>Être</i> ; Simple Tenses ...	60
Do, do. Compound Tenses ...	61
Synoptical Table of the Four Conjugations	62-64
First and Second Conjugations—	
Simple Tenses ... ... ...	62
Third and Fourth Conjugations—	
Simple Tenses ... ... ...	63
Compound Tenses ... ...	64
Negative Conjugation ...	66
Interrogative Conjugation ...	66
Interrogative-Negative Conjugation ...	68
XVII. The Passive Verb ... ... ...	70
Negative and Interrogative Forms ...	72
XVIII. Reflexive Verbs ... ... ...	74
Negative and Interrogative Forms ...	76
The Past Participle with "Avoir" ...	77
XIX. On the Use of the Subjunctive Mood	78
XX. Impersonal Verbs ... ... ...	81
XXI. Peculiarities in certain Verbs of the First Conjugation ... ... ...	82
XXII. Cases in which "Avoir" is used instead of "Être" ... ... ...	85
XXIII. Use of some Tenses of the Indicative ...	86
XXIV. The Infinitive ... ... ...	90
Infinitive without a Preposition ...	90
The Infinitive with "de" ... ...	91
The Infinitive with "à" ... ...	92
XXV. Must, Ought, Could, Might, Can, etc.	95

CHAPTER		PAGE
<b>XXVI. The Adverb</b>	...	...
Place of the Adverb	...	97
Notes on Adverbs	...	97
Formation of Adverbs of Manner from Adjectives	...	97
<b>XXVII. The Preposition</b>	...	98
Notes on Prepositions	...	99
<b>XXVIII. The Conjunction</b>	...	100
<b>IRREGULAR VERBS</b>	...	102
First Conjugation : <i>Aller, Envoyer</i>	...	104
Second Conjugation : <i>Acquérir, assaillir</i> <i>bouillir, courir, couvrir, cueillir</i>	...	105
<i>dormir, faillir, fuir, mourir, partir</i>	...	105
<i>sentir, servir, sortir, tenir</i>	...	106
<i>venir, vêtir</i>	...	107
Third Conjugation : <i>Avoir</i>	...	108
<i>s'asseoir, devoir, falloir, mouvoir, pleuvoir</i>	...	109
<i>pouvoir, recevoir, savoir, valoir</i>	...	110
<i>voir, vouloir...</i>	...	111
Fourth Conjugation : <i>Absoudre, battre</i> <i>boire, conclure, conduire, confire</i>	...	112
<i>connaître, coudre, craindre, croire</i>	...	113
<i>croître, cuire, dire, écrire</i>	...	114
<i>être, faire, joindre, lire</i>	...	115
<i>maudire, mettre, moudre, naître</i>	...	116
<i>nuire, paraître, peindre, plaisir</i>	...	117
<i>prendre, rire, suffire, suivre</i>	...	118
<i>se taire, traire, vaincre, vivre</i>	...	119
<b>VOCABULARY</b>	...	120
		<b>121-136</b>

# FRENCH GRAMMAR SELF-TAUGHT.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

I. **The Alphabet.**—The French alphabet is composed of twenty-six letters, divided into vowels and consonants.

The vowels are: a, e, i, o, u, y.

The consonants are: b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, z.

N.B.—W is only found in a few words borrowed from English or German: e.g. *whist*, *New-York* (pronounced “ouist,” “neu-york”).

II. **Accents.**—The accents are three in number: the **acute**, *l'accent aigu* (‘), the **grave**, *l'accent grave* (˘), and the **circumflex**, *l'accent circonflexe* (^).

These accents, unknown in old French, were borrowed from the Greek by the grammarians of the sixteenth century.

The **acute** accent is only used over the vowel *e*, as in *été*, summer; *café*, coffee. This é is called close *e*.<sup>1</sup>

The **grave** accent is used over the vowels *a*, *e*, *u*, as in *là*, there; *père*, father; *où*, where.

The è is called open *e*; the syllable containing it is followed by a mute syllable or else ends the word.

The **circumflex** accent is used over the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, as in *âge*, age; *tête*, head; *gîte*, lodging; *côte*, coast; *mûr*, ripe.

The circumflex accent serves to show: 1, where a letter has been dropped, e.g. *tête*, head (written *teste* in the old language, from Latin *testam*); 2, the contraction of two vowels into one, e.g. *âge* (formerly written *aage*). It is also used to distinguish words which would otherwise be spelt alike; for instance, *mur* = wall, but *mûr* = ripe.

N.B.—Accents must not be used over capitals in writing.

---

<sup>1</sup> Because pronounced with the teeth nearly closed.

**III. The Apostrophe,** *l'apostrophe* ('), marks the suppression or elision of a vowel,—*a*, *e* or *i*,—before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute:<sup>1</sup>—

<i>l'âme</i> , the soul,	instead of <i>la âme</i>
<i>l'enfant</i> , the child,	" " <i>le enfant</i>
<i>l'homme</i> , the man,	" " <i>le homme</i>
<i>s'il</i> , if <i>he</i> , and <i>s'ils</i> , if they,	" " <i>si il</i> and <i>si ils</i> .

(This is the only case in which *i* is elided.)

The apostrophe was introduced in the sixteenth century. It prevents the *hiatus*—that is to say, the discordant meeting of two vowels. The meeting of two vowels is nevertheless frequent in French.

**IV. The Hyphen,** *le trait d'union* (-), joins together the parts of a compound word, as in *grand-père*, grandfather; or the verb and the pronoun subject (in the interrogative form), as *parlez-vous?* do you speak?

**V. The Diaeresis,** *le tréma* (‘), is placed over the second of two vowels to show that these are to be pronounced separately, as *ha-ïr*, to hate; *aigu-ë* (fem. of *aigu*), sharp.

**VI. The Cedilla,** *la cédille* (¸), is placed under the *c* when the latter, preceding *a*, *o*, or *u*, is to be sounded like *s*, as in *il commença*, he began; *je reçois*, I receive; *reçu*, received.

**VII. The Tonic Accent,** *l'accent tonique*, must not be confused with the accents mentioned in Sec. II.; it is the particular stress of voice upon a syllable of a word. The tonic accent usually falls on the last syllable, e.g. *cheval'*, horse. If, however, the last syllable is mute the last but one is accented, e.g. *ro'se*, rose.

**VIII. The Liaison** is the carrying on of the final consonant of a word to the next word when the latter begins with a vowel or *h* mute.

It is not possible to give absolute rules as to when the liaison should be made; the following points should, however, be observed.

---

<sup>1</sup> The other *h* is called aspirate. There is no perceptible difference between the two except that no *liaison* (see Section VIII.) or elision takes place with *h* aspirate; e.g. *le harenq*, the herring; *la haine*, the hatred; *en haut*, above, upstairs.

The liaison is made :

- (1) Between the plural of the definite article and its noun, e.g.—  
*les amis*, the friends ; *les hommes*, the men.
- (2) Between an adjective and its noun, e.g.—  
*les mots utiles*, the useful words ;  
*les grands arbres*, the tall trees.
- (3) Between pronouns and verbs, e.g.—  
*nous avons*, we have ;  
*vous êtes*, you are.
- (4) Between adverbs and adjectives, e.g.—  
*ils sont très aimables*, they are very kind.
- (5) Between the auxiliary and the participle :—  
*ils sont arrivés*, they have arrived.
- (6) Between a preposition and the word following it—  
*devant eux*, in front of them ;  
*sans un sou*, penniless.

*D* when carried is pronounced like *t*: *quand il parle*, when he speaks.

*F* is sounded like *v*: *neuf heures*, nine o'clock.

*G* is sounded like *k*: *un long intervalle*, a long interval.

*P* is carried only in *beaucoup*, much, many, and *trop*, too, too much, too many :—

*j'ai beaucoup appris*, I have learnt much ;  
*trop étroit*, too narrow.

*S* and *x* are sounded like *z* :—

*ils avaient*, they had ;  
*deux ans*, two years.

N.B.—No liaison is made with the *t* of *et*.

# CHAPTER I.

## The Definite Article. (L'article défini.)

§ 1. The definite article agrees in gender<sup>1</sup> and number with its substantive.

### SINGULAR.

le *livre* (masc.), the book la *plume* (fem.), the pen.

Before a masculine or feminine substantive beginning with a vowel or *h* mute the vowel (*e* or *a*) is suppressed, and an apostrophe is substituted (cf. Introduction, Sec. III.); thus

Instead of *le artiste*, the artist, we must write *l'artiste*

„ „ *le homme*, the man, „ „ *l'homme*

„ „ *la abeille*, the bee, „ „ *l'abeille*.

N.B.—Note, however, *le onze*, the eleventh (in dates):  
*le onzième*, the eleventh.

### PLURAL.

les, for both genders { *les livres*, the books  
                                  *les abeilles*, the bees.

---

Learn the Present and Imperfect Indicative of the verb *avoir*, to have (p. 60), and note that the different English meanings are translated in one way only in French, e.g. *J'ai* = I have, I am having, or I do have, therefore *Ils ont* = they have, they are having, or they do have.

---

## EXERCISE I.

As the words used will occur again in the next exercise, they should be committed to memory.

Translate into French:—

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. The brother ( <i>frère</i> ) | 4. The mother ( <i>mère</i> )    |
| 2. The sister ( <i>sœur</i> )   | 5. The son ( <i>fils</i> )       |
| 3. The father ( <i>père</i> )   | 6. The daughter ( <i>fille</i> ) |

---

<sup>1</sup> The French language adopted two of the three Latin genders—the *masculine* and the *feminine*. Names of men and (usually) males of animals are masculine, names of women and (usually) females of animals are feminine, names of things which belong to neither sex are made masculine or feminine. (See also §§ 11-13.)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. The uncle ( <i>oncle</i> )                   | 23. The station ( <i>gare</i> , f.)                            |
| 8. The aunt ( <i>tante</i> )                    | 24. The hotel ( <i>hôtel</i> <sup>1</sup> , m.)                |
| 9. The man ( <i>homme</i> <sup>2</sup> )        | 25. The clock ( <i>horloge</i> <sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup> , f.) |
| 10. The woman ( <i>femme</i> )                  | 26. The watch ( <i>montre</i> , f.)                            |
| 11. The boy ( <i>garçon</i> )                   | 27. The garden ( <i>jardin</i> , m.)                           |
| 12. The girl ( <i>fille</i> )                   | 28. The grass ( <i>herbe</i> <sup>1</sup> , f.)                |
| 13. The child ( <i>enfant</i> )                 | 29. The pens ( <i>plume</i> , f.)                              |
| 14. The page ( <i>page</i> , f.)                | 30. The ink ( <i>encre</i> , f.)                               |
| 15. The sun ( <i>soleil</i> , m.)               | 31. The paper ( <i>papier</i> , m.)                            |
| 16. The moon ( <i>lune</i> , f.)                | 32. The pencils ( <i>crayon</i> , m.)                          |
| 17. The star ( <i>étoile</i> , f.)              | 33. The hour, time ( <i>heure</i> <sup>1</sup> , f.)           |
| 18. The earth ( <i>terre</i> , f.)              | 34. The minute ( <i>minute</i> , f.)                           |
| 19. The king ( <i>roi</i> )                     | 35. The day ( <i>jour</i> , m.)                                |
| 20. The queen ( <i>reine</i> )                  | 36. The week ( <i>semaine</i> , f.)                            |
| 21. The towns ( <i>ville</i> <sup>2</sup> , f.) | 37. The month ( <i>mois</i> , m.)                              |
| 22. The church ( <i>église</i> , f.)            | 38. The year ( <i>année</i> , f.)                              |

§ 2. The prepositions **de**, of, or from, and **à**, to, or at, combine with the article **le** as follows :

du (not *de le*) *livre*, of the book ; du *joli livre*, of the pretty book.

au (not *à le*) *livre*, to the book ; au *gros livre*, to the large book.

These prepositions **à** and **de** combine also with the plural article **les**, thus :

aux (not *à les*) *abeilles*, to the bees ; aux *aimables amis*, to the kind friends.

des (not *de les*) *hommes*, of the men ; des *bonnes plumes*, of the good pens.

This combination of the article with the preposition *de* or *à* is called *contraction*.

N.B.—No contraction takes place with *la* or *l'*, e.g. de *l'enfant*, of the child ; de *la chambre*, of the room ; à *l'ami*, to the friend ; à *la dame*, to the lady.

<sup>1</sup> The *h* is mute.

<sup>2</sup> The plural of nouns is formed, as in English, by adding **s** to the singular. (See also §§ 14-20.)

<sup>3</sup> *Horloge* = turret-clock ; *la pendule* = apartment clock.

§ 3. There is only one way of expressing the possessive case in French, thus:

*les ailes de l'oiseau* = {the wings of the bird,  
the bird's wings.

Learn the Preterite, the Future, and the Conditional Present of *avoir* (p. 60).

## EXERCISE II.

(a) Place the definite article preceded, 1 by *de*, 2 by *du*, before the nouns of Exercise I.

(b) Translate into French:

1. The nephew (*neveu*) of the king.
  2. The queen's niece (*nièce*).
  3. To the man.
  4. To the pen of the child.
  5. At the station.
  6. The boy's books.
  7. To the days of the week.
  8. At the clock of the church.
  9. To the grass of the gardens.
  10. He has the child's pencil.
  11. She (*elle*) had the watch of the girl.
  12. To the month of the year.
  13. From the hotel to the station.
  14. Of the gardens of the town.
  15. To the pages of the book.
  16. The children's mother.
  17. The vegetables of the gardener.

## The Indefinite Article. (L'article indéfini.)

#### § 4. The indefinite article is:

**SINGULAR** { **un**, a or an, before a masculine noun,  
                  **une**, a or an, before a feminine noun.

**PLURAL**—*des*, some, before nouns of both genders.

Ex. un chien, a dog; des chiens, (some) dogs  
une voiture, a carriage; des voitures, (some) carriages.

## The Partitive Article. (L'article partitif.)

§ 5. The partitive article *some* or *any* is translated in French by **du**, **de la**, **de l'** and **des**. It will be seen that these forms are the same as those translating *of* or *from the* (cf. § 2). *Some* or *any*, frequently omitted in English, must be expressed in French.

Ex. *Vous avez du pain*, you have (some) bread.  
*Il avait de l'eau*, he had (some) water.  
*Aurons-nous<sup>1</sup> des poires?* Shall we have (some) pears.

§ 6. There are two cases in which *some* or *any* is rendered by **de** (**d'** before a vowel or *h* mute):

(a) When an adjective precedes the noun.

Ex. *Il a de bon pain*, he has (some) good bread.  
*Elles avaient de grands chapeaux*, they had (some) large hats.

But *Ils ont du papier vert*, they have green paper (because the adjective **does not precede** the noun).

(b) After a negative or an adverb of quantity.

Ex. *Nous n'avions pas<sup>2</sup> d'argent*, we had no (not any) money.

*J'ai beaucoup de cousins*, I have many cousins.  
*Ils eurent trop de viande*, they had too much meat.

N.B.—The definite, indefinite and partitive articles **must** be repeated before **every** noun.

Ex. *Le roi et la reine*, the king and queen.

*J'ai un fils et une fille*, I have a son and daughter.  
*Vous auriez du pain et du fromage*, you would have some bread and cheese.

Learn the Imperative of *avoir*, revise all the tenses previously learnt, and learn §§ 114 and 117 on the *negative* and *interrogative* conjugation of a verb.

### EXERCISE III.

[The words used in this and the following exercises are to be found in the vocabulary at the end of the book.]

<sup>1</sup> To conjugate a verb *interrogatively*, place the pronoun subject after the verb and insert a hyphen. (See also § 117.)

<sup>2</sup> To conjugate a verb *negatively*, place **ne** before the verb and **pas** after it. (See also § 114.)

Translate into French :

1. Have you any wine?
2. They had meat.
3. Has he<sup>1</sup> any milk?
4. We shall have some water.
5. You would have too much coffee.
6. We used to have good chocolate.
7. I was having beer.
8. I shall have no friends.
9. I had (imperf.) good beef.
10. I had (pret.) some mutton.
11. Did you have any sugar?
12. I should have some oil and vinegar.
13. I shall not have water.
14. We had (pret.) apples and pears.
15. They had no salt.
16. Here are (*voici*) some children who (*qui*) have no mother.
17. His (*son*) brother will have money.
18. My (*ma*) sister had some tea and an egg.
19. Have you any change?
20. The boy had no pen.

### Use of the Definite Article.

§ 7. The definite article is used in French more extensively than in English. The following are the principal cases in which it is used:

- (a) Before nouns taken in a general sense.  
Ex. *L'argent et l'or*, silver and gold.
- (b) Before titles.  
Ex. *Le roi Edouard*, King Edward.  
*Le capitaine X.*, Captain X.
- (c) Before proper names preceded by an adjective.  
Ex. *Le petit George*, little George.
- (d) Before names of countries, provinces and continents.  
Ex. *La France et l'Angleterre*, France and England;  
except after **en**, as:  
*Il est en Amérique*, he is in America;  
and after **de** before names of countries used adjectively, as:  
*L'empereur d'Allemagne*, the Emperor of Germany.

### Remarks on the Indefinite Article.

§ 8. The indefinite article is omitted in French before a noun-attribute denoting a profession.

Ex. *Il est cordonnier*, he is a bootmaker.

§ 9. *A* or *an* is rendered by **le** or **la** before a substantive indicating measure or quantity.

Ex. *Trois francs la bouteille*, three francs a bottle.  
*Cinquante centimes la douzaine*, fifty centimes a dozen.

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 117, Note 3.

§ 10. *A* or *an* is translated by **par** before a substantive denoting time.

Ex. *Mille francs par an*, a thousand francs a year.  
*Trois fois par jour*, three times a day.

---

**Learn** the Present, Imperfect and Preterite Indicative of the verb *être*, to be (p. 60).

---

#### EXERCISE IV.

1. Poor Henry is very ill.
  2. King Edward was (imperf.) the son of Queen Victoria.
  3. Is England an island?
  4. The Emperor of Russia was in France four years ago (*il y a quatre ans*).
  5. He is a watchmaker.
  6. He comes (*vient*) twice a week.
  7. Sugar costs (*coute*) thirty centimes a pound.
  8. Colonel Brown was the brother of the prince.
  9. Wine is dear; beer is cheap (*bon marché*).
  10. Are you an officer?
  11. The last king of France was (pret.) Louis-Philippe.
  12. Boys are not always industrious.
  13. Is he not an actor?
  14. My (*mon*) brother was a doctor.
  15. Asia is larger (*plus grande*) than Europe.
- 

#### EXERCISE V.

This exercise is a recapitulation of Exercises I.-IV., and is based on §§ 1 to 10 of the Grammar. Before attempting it the student should learn the Future, Conditional and Imperative of *être* (p. 60).

N.B.—There is *or* there are = *il y a*; there was *or* there were = *il y avait*.

1. The lady's hat is black.
  2. There is no clock in this (*cette*) house.
  3. The door of the room is closed (*fermée*); the window is open (*ouverte*).
  4. Servants are scarce (*rares*) in the town.
  5. Doctor Smith has no children.
  6. Have you a watch?
  7. We were at the hotel when they were at the station.
  8. The king and queen will be in the church.
  9. If I were (imperf.) rich, I would have a motor-car.
  10. Would you have a bicycle?
  11. Will he be a soldier or a sailor?
  12. The Emperor of Germany is the cousin of King George.
  13. The boys will have pens and paper.
  14. Will you not have a letter from your (*votre*) mother?
  15. Were we in America?
  16. Have they any water?
  17. This man has good wine.
  18. They are in Spain three times a month.
  19. I have too much vinegar.
  20. There was beer at (*à*) fifty centimes a glass.
-

## CHAPTER II.

### Gender of Substantives.

§ 11. As stated on page 10 (footnote) a French substantive is either masculine or feminine. The best way to remember the genders of nouns is to learn the article with each noun, but the following simple rules may be found useful.

§ 12. To the **masculine** gender belong :

(a) The names of males, days, months, seasons, cardinal points : *le marin*, the sailor; *le mardi*, the Tuesday; *le printemps*, the spring; *le sud*, the south.

(b) The names of trees, mountains, metals, colours, decimal weights and measures, and countries (except those ending in *e* mute): *le noyer*, the walnut-tree; *le Mont-Vésuve*, Vesuvius; *le cuivre*, copper; *le rouge*, red; *le litre*, the litre; *le Portugal*, Portugal.

§ 13. To the **feminine** gender belong : Names of females, countries ending in *e* mute, abstract nouns : *la poule*, the hen; *la France*, France; *la prudence*, prudence.

N.B.—The above rules are subject to many exceptions.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### Plural of Substantives and Adjectives.

§ 14. The plural of substantives and adjectives is formed by adding **s** to the singular.

Ex. *Le chien*, the dog, *les chiens*, the dogs; *grand*, large, tall, *grands*.

§ 15. Substantives and adjectives ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* remain unchanged in the plural.

Ex. *Le fils*, the son, *les fils*, the sons; *silencieux*, silent, *silencieux*; *le nez*, the nose, *les nez*, the noses.

§ 16. Nouns and adjectives whose singular ends in *au* or *eu* take **x** in the plural.

**Ex.** *Le bateau*, the boat, *les bateaux*, the boats ;  
*beau*, pretty, fine, handsome, *beaux* ; *le neveu*,  
the nephew, *les neveux*, the nephews.

Likewise the six following nouns in *ou* :

<i>le bijou</i> , the jewel, <i>les bijoux</i>	<i>le genou</i> , the knee, <i>les genoux</i>
<i>le caillou</i> , the pebble, <i>les cailloux</i>	<i>le hibou</i> , the owl, <i>les hiboux</i>
	<i>le joujou</i> , the toy, <i>les joujoux</i>
<i>le chou</i> , the cabbage, <i>les choux</i>	

Note : *le landau*, the landau, *les landaus* ; *bleu*, blue, *bleus*.

§ 17. Nouns and adjectives ending in *al* change *al* into **aux** in the plural.

**Ex.** *Le cheval*, the horse, *les chevaux*, the horses ;  
*le journal*, the newspaper, *les journaux*, the  
newspapers ; *principal*, principal, *principaux*.

§ 18. The following substantives in *al* follow the general rule and add **s** :

<i>le bal</i> , the dance, ball, <i>les bals</i>	<i>le festival</i> , the festival, <i>les festivals</i>
--	---

<i>le carnaval</i> , the carnival, <i>les carnavaux</i>	<i>le régal</i> , the treat, <i>les régals</i> .
---	--

<i>le chacal</i> , the jackal, <i>les chacals</i>
---

§ 19. Seven nouns in *ail* form their plural by changing *ail* into **aux**.

<i>le bail</i> , the lease, <i>les baux</i>
---

<i>le corail</i> , the coral, <i>les coraux</i>
---

<i>l'émail</i> , the enamel, <i>les émaux</i>
---

<i>le soupirail</i> , the ventilator, <i>les soupiraux</i>
--

<i>le travail</i> , the work, <i>les travaux</i>
--

<i>le vantail</i> , the folding-door, <i>les vantaux</i>
--

<i>le vitrail</i> , the stained-glass window, <i>les vitraux</i> .
--

§ 20. The following nouns have two plural forms with different meanings :

<i>l'aïeul</i> , the grandfather, the ancestor
--

<i>le ciel</i> , the sky, Heaven
----------------------------------

<i>les aïeux</i> , the ancestors
----------------------------------

<i>les aïeuls</i> , the grandfathers
--------------------------------------

<i>les cieux</i> , the skies, heavens
---------------------------------------

<i>les ciels</i> , skies (in pictures), climates
--

*l'œil*, the eye

*les yeux*, the eyes

*les œils*, used in compound nouns, as *œils-de-bœuf*, oval windows.

Note also the following :

*Monsieur*, Mr., sir ; plural, *messieurs*.

*Madame*, Mrs., madam ; plural, *mesdames*.<sup>1</sup>

*Mademoiselle*, Miss ; plural, *mesdemoiselles*.

*Tout*, all ; plural, *tous*.

---

Read carefully §§ 105, 112, 113, on the conjugation of verbs, and note besides the following points :

1. The endings of the Imperfect of all verbs are always the same, i.e. *ais, aïs, ait, ions, iez, aient* (cf. Imperfect of *avoir*).

2. The endings of the Future of all verbs are the same as those of the Present of *avoir*, i.e. *ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont*.

3. The endings of the Conditional of all verbs are the same as those of the Imperfect, i.e. *ais, aïs, ait, ions, iez, aient*.

The above-mentioned rules and points being mastered, the Present, Imperfect, Preterite, Future, Conditional Present, and Imperative of the verb *aimer* should be learnt without difficulty (p. 62).

---

## EXERCISE VI.

Translate into French :

1. The voice of the ladies.
  2. The lines of the book.
  3. The chairs and (the) armchairs of the dining-room.
  4. The boats have (some) sails.
  5. The general likes his (*ses*) nephews.
  6. The newspapers have ten (*dix*) pages.
  7. The streets have no pavements.
  8. The knees of the horses.
  6. The admirals liked the dance.
  10. Do you like (the) jewels ?
  11. (The) children are fond of (say *like*) (the) toys.
  12. The eyes of the girl.
  13. He loved his (*ses*) sons and (his) daughters.
  14. You will like the pictures.
  15. They used to like (the) corals.
  16. There are (some) soldiers in the hospitals.
  17. We shall have the leases of those (*ces*) houses.
  18. The works of the engineers.
  19. Ladies, you have no spoons.
  20. Those animals are (some) jackals.
- 

In Exercise VII. adjectives have been introduced.

<sup>1</sup> Note that *la dame* = the lady.

In French, adjectives **agree in gender and number** with the noun they qualify.

Ex. *Les petites filles*, the little girls.

*Les clous étaient pointus*, the nails were sharp.

(See also §§ 21 and 22.)

Be careful to apply the Rules, §5, and §6—"N.B."

---

### EXERCISE VII.

Translate into French :

1. The streets of the town are broad.
  2. You would like the shops.
  3. In France all the villages have a mayor.
  4. There are cabbages in the fields.
  5. The [2]wild [1]animals are in the forests.
  6. The little girl had (the) [2]blue [1]eyes, her (ses) brothers had (the) [2]fair [1]hair.<sup>1</sup>
  7. The canals will be useful.
  8. We had carriages and horses.
  9. The offices of the firm are open (*ouverts*) every day (*tous les jours*).
  10. Do you like the winter? No, I like the summer.
  11. The flowers of the spring, the fruits (*les fruits*) of the autumn.
  12. These (*ces*) doors have two bolts.
  13. These grapes are very sweet.
  14. We used to have oranges and apples.
  15. The knives and forks are on the table.
  16. These generals had several crosses.
  17. The inhabitants would not be silent.
  18. Will they like the [2]old [1]wines?
  19. The [2]royal [1]guards have horses.
  20. All the ships would not be in the harbour.
- 

Before proceeding further the student must make himself familiar with verbs of the first conjugation by conjugating a few on the model given (*aimer*) in the table (p. 62).

As indicated in § 105, he will first find the *stem* of the verb by cutting off the ending *er* of the Infinitive; the stem remains unchanged throughout, and the *endings* of the various tenses are to be added to it. (The endings are in thick type in the table of conjugations, pp. 62-64.)

---

### EXERCISE VIII.

Write the Present and Imperfect of *porter*, to carry; *parler*, to speak; *chercher*, to look for; the Preterite of *chanter*, to sing; *donner*, to give.

---

<sup>1</sup> Note "the hair" (i.e. a head of hair) = *les cheveux*. *Un cheveu* = a single hair.

## CHAPTER IV.

### The Adjective. (L'adjectif.)

§ 21. **Agreement of the Adjective.**—Adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns or pronouns to which they belong.

Ex. *La petite maison*, the small house.

*Les grands arbres*, the tall trees.

*Ce cheval et ce chien sont noirs*, this horse and dog are black.

§ 22. When an adjective refers to two nouns or pronouns of different genders it is put in the **masculine plural**.

Ex. *Le frère et la sœur étaient muets*, the brother and sister were dumb.

*Elle et son père seront inquiets*, she and her father will be anxious.

§ 23. **Feminine of Nouns and Adjectives.**—The feminine of nouns and adjectives is formed by adding an **e mute** to the masculine, e.g.

*le marchand, la marchande*, the shopkeeper  
*petit, petite*, small ; *grand, grande*, great, large.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—(1) If the masculine already ends in **e mute**, there is no change, e.g.,  
*un élève, une élève*, a pupil ; *calme, calme*, calm.

(2) Those ending in *x* and *f* change *x* and *f* into **se** and **ve** respectively, e.g.

*l'époux, the husband, l'épouse, the wife*  
*heureux, heureuse, happy ; neuf, neuve, new.*

**EXCEPT :**

<i>doux, douce</i> ,	gentle,	<i>faux, fausse</i> ,	false
sweet		<i>roux, rousse</i> ,	reddish.

(3) Should the masculine end in *el, eil, en, et, on*, the final consonant **must be doubled** before the **e mute** is added, as :

<i>cruel, cruelle, cruel</i>	<i>sujet, sujette, subject</i>
<i>pareil, pareille, alike</i>	<i>bon, bonne, good.</i>

*parisien, parisienne, Parisian*

## EXCEPT:

<i>complet, complète, complete</i>	<i>indiscret, indiscrete, indis-</i>
<i>concret, concrète, concrete</i>	<i>creet</i>
<i>discret, discrète, discreet</i>	<i>inquiet, inquiète, anxious</i>
<i>incomplet, incomplète, in-</i>	<i>replet, replète, replete</i>
<i>complete</i>	<i>secret, secrète, secret,</i>

which follow the rule (4) of adjectives ending in *er*.

(4) Nouns and adjectives ending in *er* take a **grave accent** over the *e* preceding the *r* and add **e mute** (cf. Introduction, Sec. II., the grave accent), as:

*amer, amère, bitter*      *léger, légère, light.*

(5) Adjectives ending in *gu* form their feminine in **guë**; that is to say, a diæresis is placed over the final *e* mute, as:

*aigu, aiguë, sharp*      *ambigu, ambiguë, ambiguous.*

In *aiguë* the **gu** and **ë** are separate syllables, and *guë* must not be confounded with *gue* in such words as *la bague*, the ring, *la vague*, the wave, in which *ue* is quite mute (cf. Introduction, sec. V.).

[The student will now do Exercise IX.]

(6) Adjectives ending in *c* form their feminine in **che** and **que**:

<i>blanc, blanche, white</i>	<i>franc, franque, Frankish</i>
<i>franc, franche, frank</i>	<i>public, publique, public</i>
straightforward	<i>turc, turque, Turkish.</i>
<i>sec, sèche, dry</i>	

But *grec, Greek*, has feminine *grecque*.

(7) Five adjectives have a **double form** for the masculine:

## MASCULINE.

<i>beau</i>	<i>bel</i>
<i>nouveau</i>	<i>nouvel</i>
<i>fou</i>	<i>fol</i>
<i>mou</i>	<i>mol</i>
<i>vieux</i>	<i>vieil</i>

## FEMININE.

<i>belle</i>	<i>beautiful, handsome</i>
<i>nouvelle</i>	<i>new</i>
<i>folle</i>	<i>foolish, mad</i>
<i>molle</i>	<i>soft</i>
<i>vieille</i>	<i>old.</i>

The masculine forms *bel, nouvel, etc.*, are used before substantives beginning with a **vowel or h mute** in order to avoid the hiatus caused by the meeting of two vowels (cf. Introduction, Sec. III., last part). Thus we say, *un bel homme*, a fine man; *le nouvel an*, the new year.

(8) Nouns and adjectives in *eur* form their feminine in four different ways.

(a) Those with a comparative meaning add **e mute** to the masculine, as :

*majeur, majeure*, major, of age  
*meilleur, meilleure*, better  
*inférieur, inférieure*, inferior  
*supérieur, supérieure*, superior.

(b) Those derived from the stem of present participles change *eur* into **euse**, as :

*vendeur, vendueuse*, seller  
*danseur, danseuse*, dancer  
*chanteur, chanteuse*, singer.

But cantatrice for a noted professional singer, e.g. *Madame Patti est une cantatrice célèbre*, Madame Patti is a famous singer.

(c) Those in *teur* (Latin *tor*) change *teur* into **trice**, as:

<i>acteur, actor</i>	<i>actrice</i>
<i>directeur, director, head-</i>	<i>directrice</i>
master	
<i>bienfaiteur, benefactor</i>	<i>bienfaitrice</i>

(d) Finally, a few change *eur* into **eresse**, as :

<i>défendeur, défenderesse</i> , defendant (legal term)	
<i>demandeur, demanderesse</i> , plaintiff	"
<i>vengeur, vengeresse</i> , avenger, avenging.	"

---

[The student will now do Exercise X.]

---

§ 24. The following adjectives form their feminines irregularly :

<i>bas, basse</i> , low	<i>épais, épaisse</i> , thick
<i>gras, grasse</i> , fat	<i>expès, expresse</i> , express
<i>las, lasse</i> , weary	<i>gros, grosse</i> , big, stout.
<i>gentil, gentille</i> , nice,	<i>frais, fraiche</i> , fresh
pretty	<i>long, longue</i> , long
<i>nul, nulle</i> , no, null, nil	<i>favori, favorite</i> , favourite.
<i>sot, sotte</i> . stupid, foolish	

It will be noticed that most of the adjectives given above double the final consonant of the masculine and add *e mute* [cf. § 23 (3)].

§ 25. The following nouns have an irregular feminine:

<i>âne</i> , donkey, <i>ânesse</i>	( <i>le</i> ) <i>monsieur</i> , (the) gentleman,
<i>comte</i> , count, earl, <i>comtesse</i>	( <i>la</i> ) <i>dame</i>
<i>duc</i> , duke, <i>duchesse</i>	<i>vieillard</i> , old man, <i>vieille</i>
<i>prince</i> , prince, <i>princesse</i>	<i>frère</i> , brother, <i>sœur</i>
<i>maitre</i> , master, <i>maitresse</i>	<i>garçon</i> , boy, <i>fille</i>
<i>nègre</i> , negro, <i>négresse</i>	<i>gendre</i> , son-in-law, <i>bru</i>
<i>compagnon</i> , companion, <i>compagne</i>	<i>homme</i> , man, <i>femme</i>
<i>paysan</i> , peasant, <i>paysanne</i>	<i>mari</i> , husband, <i>femme</i>
<i>roi</i> , king, <i>reine</i> [trice]	<i>oncle</i> , uncle, <i>tante</i>
<i>empereur</i> , emperor, <i>impéra-</i>	<i>papa</i> , papa, <i>maman</i>
<i>gouverneur</i> , governor, <i>gou- vernante</i>	<i>père</i> , father, <i>mère</i>
<i>monsieur</i> , sir, Mr., <i>madame</i>	<i>bœuf</i> , ox, <i>vache</i>
	<i>coq</i> , cock, <i>poule</i>
	<i>cheval</i> , horse, <i>jument</i> .

§ 26. Note the following nouns and expressions:

<i>la grand'mère</i> , the grandmother
<i>la grand' messe</i> , the high mass
<i>la grand' route</i> , the highway
<i>ce n'est pas grand' chose</i> , 'tis no great thing ('tis not much)
<i>à grand' peine</i> , with great difficulty
<i>avoir grand' faim</i> , to be very hungry
<i>avoir grand' soif</i> , to be very thirsty.

Originally *grand* was both masculine and feminine, and the compound words given here were written without the apostrophe, which was inserted later when the grammarians wrote *grande* for the feminine.

[The student will now do Exercise XI.]

### EXERCISE IX.

(On § 23, 1 to 5.)

(a) In the following the adjectives in italics are in the *masculine singular*. Make them agree with their nouns or pronouns:

1. La *petit* marchande a de *bon* légumes. 2. L'*heureux* mère donnera des joujoux à ses (her) *joli* enfants. 3. La *dernier* poire

n'était pas *doux*. 4. Le jardinier coupait (to cut) l'herbe *vert*. 5. Les *bon* oranges arrivèrent d'Espagne. 6. Elle porta une robe *neuf*. 7. La barbe *roux* des gardes *impérial*. 8. Êtes-vous *parisien* mesdames? 9. Je cherche une montre *pareil*. 10. Il ne trouva (to find) pas une collection *complet*. 11. Les deux souverains eurent une entrevue *secret*. 12. Elle n'est pas *sujet* à cette maladie (illness).

(b) Translate into French :

1. Our (*nos*) brave soldiers gained a great victory.
  2. The first carriage will arrive presently.
  3. The destruction of the animals was complete.
  4. This woman is very proud.
  5. Give me (*donnez-moi*) the [2]red [1]ink and the [2]blue [1]pencils.
  6. His [2]eldest [1]daughter is not pleased.
  7. I have a [2]similar [1]collection.
  8. They were carrying [2]green [1]sunshades.
  9. The house had a new door.
  10. I am looking for an old (use *ancien*) church.
  11. (The) good meat is rare in this (*ce*) country.
- 

### EXERCISE X.

(On § 23, 6 to 8.)

(a) In the following sentences the nouns and adjectives in italics are in the masculine singular. Make them agree with the nouns to which they refer :

1. L'herbe est *sec*.
2. La matinée (morning) est *beau*.
3. La *vieux* dame est la *bienfaiteur* des pauvres (poor).
4. La directrice sera *nouveau*.
5. Ma fille, vous êtes *fou*.
6. La bibliothèque (the library) *public* de la *beau* ville.
7. Ces cantatrices sont *grec*<sup>1</sup> ou (or) *turc*.<sup>1</sup>
8. L'actrice était *meilleur* que l'acteur.
9. Ma sœur est *majeur*.
10. La neige (snow) est *blanc*.
11. Êtes-vous *bon* *danseur*, mesdemoiselles?
12. Elle aura une robe *blanc*.

(b) Translate into French :

1. This handsome man is an actor.
2. He did not give a [2]straight-forward [1]answer.
3. He is looking for a better position.
4. The New Year begins to-morrow.
5. They looked at the [2]public [1]library.
6. My brother's new friend is not old.
7. We are looking at the [2]white [1]snow.
8. They will cut down (*couper*) this old tree.
9. This woman is a Turkish dancer.
10. The ground (*la terre*) is dry.
11. This (*ce*) wine is of [2]superior [1]quality.
12. The old woman is *mad*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Note that adjectives of nationality are spelt with a small letter in French.

## EXERCISE XI.

*(On §§ 24 and 25.)*

*(a)* The adjectives in italics are in the masculine singular. Make them agree with their nouns:—

1. Une *gros* canne.
2. Nous avons fait (taken) une *long* promenade.
3. Cette poule est très *gras*.
4. Votre gouvernante est *gentil*.
5. Donnez-moi de l'eau *frais*.
6. La compagne *favori* de la *vieux* reine.
7. Ma (my) sœur n'est pas *las*.
8. Il y avait une porte *bas*.
9. Cette paysanne était *sot*.
10. Cette rue (street) est très *long*.

*(b)* Translate into French:

1. He was carrying a big stick.
  2. This (*cette*) ink is thick.
  3. The duchess has taken her (*sa*) <sup>the</sup>favourite <sup>the</sup>walk.
  4. Are you the governess of this pretty little girl?
  5. The cream was too thick and it was not fresh.
  6. The gardener will cut the big branches of that (*cet*) tree.
  7. The new empress gave a present to the princess.
  8. The headmistress of the school is my (*ma*) grandmother.
  9. The father and mother of the child were mad.
  10. The influence of that (*ce*) country is nil.
- 

## CHAPTER V.

### Place of Adjectives.

§ 27. As a general rule, the adjective follows the noun which it qualifies, e.g.

*Un homme heureux*, a happy man.

§ 28. Place before the noun (generally):

*(a)* Adjectives used in a figurative sense.

Ex. *Un noir attentat*, a black crime.

*(b)* Adjectives which express an inherent quality.

Ex. *Un habile médecin*, a clever doctor.

*(c)* The following common adjectives (usually):

<i>beau</i> ,	beautiful,	<i>gros</i> ,	big, stout	<i>moindre</i> ,	less
fine		<i>jeune</i> ,	young	<i>petit</i> ,	small, little
<i>bon</i> ,	good	<i>joli</i> ,	pretty	<i>pire</i> ,	worse
<i>cher</i> ,	dear	<i>long</i> ,	long	<i>sot</i> ,	foolish, stupid
<i>court</i> ,	short	<i>mauvais</i> ,	bad	<i>vieux</i> ,	old
<i>digne</i> ,	worthy	<i>méchant</i> ,	wicked	<i>vilain</i> ,	ugly.
<i>grand</i> ,	tall, large	<i>meilleur</i> ,	better		

Ex. *Un vieux parapluie*, an old umbrella

*Un sot enfant*, a foolish child.

§ 29. Place **after** the noun (usually) :

(a) Participles and nouns used as adjectives.

Ex. *Un pays intéressant*, an interesting country  
*Une main amie*, a friendly hand.

(b) Adjectives denoting a physical quality, such as colour, shape, taste, etc.

Ex. *Un drapeau rouge*, a red flag  
*Un chapeau rond*, a round hat  
*Des raisins amers*, bitter (sour) grapes.

(c) Adjectives denoting nationality, dignity, religion.

Ex. *La république française*, the French Republic  
*La famille royale*, the Royal Family  
*La religion protestante*, the Protestant religion.

(d) Adjectives containing more syllables than the noun they qualify.

Ex. *Un fils respectueux*, a respectful son.

§ 30. The meaning of some adjectives varies according as they precede or follow the substantive; only a few of the more common instances are given here :

*Un brave homme*, a worthy man      *un homme brave*, a brave man

*Un grand homme*, a great man      *un homme grand*, a tall man

*Un honnête homme*, an honest man      *un homme honnête*, a polite man

*Un malhonnête homme*, a dishonest man      *un homme malhonnête*, a rude man

*Un jeune homme*, a young man      *un homme jeune*, a youthful man

*La dernière année*, the last year (of a given period)      *l'année dernière*, last year

*La même maison*, the same house      *la maison même*, the very house, the house itself

*Une nouvelle bicyclette*, a new (i.e. a fresh, another) bicycle      *une bicyclette nouvelle*, a new bicycle (of a new pattern).

[*Une bicyclette neuve*, means a new (i.e. brand new) bicycle.]

*Un seul homme*, a single (an only) man      *un homme seul*, a lonely man.

§ 31. Two adjectives qualifying the same noun are usually placed after it and separated by *et*, *and*.

Ex. *Une femme jeune et belle*, a young and beautiful woman.

**Learn** the compound tenses of the Indicative of *avoir*, *être* (p. 61), and *aimer* (p. 64). Note that by adding the past participle of any verb to the auxiliary *avoir*, we have the compound tenses. (See also § 113, tenses formed from the past participle.)

## EXERCISE XII.

1. My sister is studying the French language.
2. He will look for a better pen.
3. My young niece has bought some blue ribbon.
4. We met an Irish family at the seaside last year.
5. He will relate an amusing story after dinner.
6. The clerks of that firm are all (*tous*) good workers.
7. Her (*sa*) dear mother married a Spanish gentleman.
8. He speaks several foreign languages.
9. This (*ce*) little black dog has found his (*son*) master.
10. The big branches of these (*ces*) tall trees give much shade.
11. The royal arms were on the last carriage.
12. I asked the way of (*à*) that stout policeman.
13. I have paid ten pounds [for]<sup>1</sup> my new bicycle.
14. This (*ce*) morning we took (*avons fait*) a long walk.
15. Have you visited that (*cette*) beautiful church? Not yet (*pas encore*).
16. We have given an interesting book to the little English boy.
17. This (*cette*) fine motor-car has cost ten thousand francs.
18. When will you visit the Japanese exhibition? Perhaps to-morrow.
19. The last year of the king's reign has been full of sad incidents.
20. You will find my black pocket-book on the small table.

## CHAPTER VI.

### Degrees of Comparison.

§ 32. The **comparative** of adjectives and adverbs is formed by prefixing the adverb *plus*, *more*, to the positive (i.e. the adjective itself).

Ex. *Le garçon est plus grand que la fille*,  
The boy is taller than the girl.

§ 33. Besides the above, which is called the comparative of **superiority**, there is the comparative of **inferiority**,

---

<sup>1</sup> Words in square brackets in the exercises are not to be translated.

which is formed by prefixing the adverb **moins**, *less*, to the adjective; and the comparative of **equality**, formed by placing the adverb **aussi**, *as*, before the adjective.

Ex. (a) *Le garçon est moins grand que la fille,*  
The boy is less tall than the girl.

(b) *Le garçon est aussi grand que la fille,*  
The boy is as tall as the girl.

In negative sentences *aussi* may be replaced by *si*, *so*, as:

(c) *Le garçon n'est pas si (or aussi) grand que la fille,*  
The boy is not so tall as the girl.

N.B.—(1) *Than* and *as* after a comparative are translated by *que*. (2) *Plus*, *moins* and *aussi* are generally repeated before every adjective.

**Ex.** *Cet homme est plus grand et plus fort que son frère,*  
This man is taller and stronger than his brother.

Observe the way of rendering the English *the more...the more, the less...the less*:

- (1) Plus nous gagnons, plus nous dépensons,  
The more we earn, the more we spend.
  - (2) Moins nous avions, moins nous dépensions;  
The less we had, the less we spent.
  - (3) Plus nous sommes riches, plus nous désirons l'être,  
The richer we are, the richer we wish to be.

§ 34. The **superlative** is formed by placing the definite article or a possessive adjective (see § 37) before the comparative.

Ex. (a) <i>Il est le plus généreux,</i> He is the most generous. (b) <i>Mon plus joli tableau,</i> My finest picture. (c) <i>Elle est la moins belle,</i> She is the least handsome.	Superlative of superiority. Superlative of inferiority.
---	--

§ 35. The above form of the superlative is called the **superlative relative**. There is also the **superlative absolute**, which is formed by prefixing **bien**, **fort**, **très**, **very**, **extrêmement**, **extremely**, to the adjective.

**Ex.** *Cette île est très petite,*  
This island is very small.

§ 36. Three adjectives and their corresponding adverbs are compared irregularly :

ADJECTIVES.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bon, good	meilleur	le meilleur
mauvais, bad	pire (or plus mauvais)	le pire (or le plus mauvais)
petit, small	moindre (or plus petit)	le moindre (or le plus petit).

ADVERBS.

bien, well	mieux	le mieux
mal, badly	pis (or plus mal)	le pis (or le plus mal)
peu, little	moins	le moins.

Note also :

beaucoup, much      plus      le plus.

N.B.—The word **beaucoup**, *much*, *many*, cannot be preceded by another adverb as in English ; thus, *very much*, *very many*, must be translated by **beaucoup** (not *très beaucoup*) ; *too much* = *trop*.

Ex. *Merci beaucoup*, thank you very much.

*C'est trop*, it is too much.

---

Learn §§ 118 and 123 on the interrogative and interrogative-negative conjugation.

---

### EXERCISE XIII.

1. Snow is whiter than milk.
2. He is happier than a king.
3. Is the Seine less deep than the Thames?
4. London is <sup>[1]</sup>the most populous <sup>[1]</sup>city in<sup>1</sup> Europe.
5. He has shaken hands with (*il a serré la main à*) his most cruel enemy.
6. Is not my house as large as that one (*celle-là*)?
7. Yes (*Si*), but it is not so convenient.
8. The finest picture was that (*celui*) of the youngest artist.
9. Have you tasted this (*ce*) red wine?
10. It is (*c'est*) the best.
11. He speaks very well, but his smallest sister speaks still better.
12. Would he not be the cleverest doctor in<sup>1</sup> the town?
13. We did not find the least trace of water in the cellar.
14. Was not the food worse to-day than last week?
15. My bedroom has not the largest windows.
16. Are not these sailors braver and stronger than you (*ne<sup>2</sup>*) thought?

---

<sup>1</sup> *In* after a superlative is rendered by **de**.

<sup>2</sup> *Ne* is used before the verb of a subordinate sentence modified by a comparative.

king was [2]the wisest [1]man of his time. 17. Thursday has been [2]the hottest [1]day (*journée*, f.) in the month. 18. This (*cette*) woman is very unhappy; her son is dead (*mort*). 19. In my opinion (*d'après mon avis*) a white rose is not so pretty as<sup>1</sup> a yellow [one] [2]. 20. He has left his (*ses*) most faithful friends for a stranger.

## CHAPTER VII.

### Possessive Adjectives.

§ 37. The possessive adjectives are :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	
mon	ma	mes	my
ton	ta	tes	thy
son	sa	ses	his, her, its
		notre	our
		votre	your
		leur	their.

§ 38. These adjectives agree with **the object possessed**, and are repeated before every noun.

Ex. *Son père, sa mère et ses sœurs,*  
His (or her) father, mother and sisters.

§ 39. Before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, **mon**, **ton**, **son** are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, in order to avoid the hiatus (see Introd. III.):

Ex. *Mon âme* (instead of *ma âme*), my soul  
*son image* ( „ „ *sa image*, his image).

§ 40. The possessive adjectives are used instead of the English possessive pronouns in such phrases as the following :

*Un de mes cousins*, a cousin of mine.  
*Un de nos amis*, a friend of ours.

N.B.—The definite article is generally used in French instead of the possessive adjective, when the possessor is clearly defined. This is particularly the case with substantives denoting parts of the body.

Ex. (a) *Il avait une canne à la main.*  
He had a stick in his hand.

<sup>1</sup> Note that *que* becomes *qu'* before a vowel. <sup>2</sup> See footnote, p. 27.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### Demonstrative Adjectives.

§ 41. The demonstrative adjectives are—

**Ce** for the masculine singular : *ce pont*, this *or* that bridge.

**Cet** is used instead of *ce* before a masculine noun beginning with **a vowel or h mute** : *cet ami*, this *or* that friend; *cet habit*, this *or* that coat.

**Cette** for the feminine singular : *cette rivière*, this *or* that river.

**Ces** for the plural (both genders) : *ces fleurs*, these *or* those flowers.

§ 42. The demonstrative adjective must be **repeated** before each substantive.

Ex. *Ce jardin et cette maison sont à moi*,  
This (*or that*) garden and this (*or that*) house are mine.

§ 43. When it is necessary to preserve the distinction between *this* and *that*, **ci** (from *ici*, here) and **là** (there) are added to the substantive and joined to it by a hyphen.

Ex. *Cette rue-ci ou cette rue-là*, this street or that street.

---

### EXERCISE XIV.

1. My brothers have bought this carpet.
2. I found these scissors on the mantel-piece.
3. An uncle of mine [2] has given [1] us that house.
4. Does he not speak that language as well as his sister?
5. I met those gentlemen at the station.
6. Bring me (*-moi*) my slippers; they are under that armchair.
7. Show your ticket to that inspector.
8. Is my breakfast ready? Not yet (*pas encore*), sir.
9. This fish is not fresh; bring me something else (*autre chose*).
10. Is there<sup>1</sup> enough (*de*) sugar in your tea?
11. You will find her name on that visiting card.
12. Have you not lent your umbrella to my [2] elder [1] brother?
13. We shall cross the river by that bridge.
14. Is this large building a factory?
15. We are sending these newspapers to a countryman of ours in America.
16. There is a field at the end (*au bout*) of that street.
17. Are your sisters ready? We are going (*nous partons*).
18. Will this train arrive early?
19. His brother and sister are dead.
20. His ambition was not very great.

---

<sup>1</sup> We have already seen that *there is*, *there are* = **il y a**. *Is there?* and *are there?* = **y a-t-il?**

## CHAPTER IX.

### Numeral Adjectives. (Adjectifs numéraux.)

**§ 44. Cardinal Numbers.**—The student must learn the numbers given here; other numbers can easily be supplied.

1. Un ( <i>masc.</i> ), une <sup>1</sup> ( <i>fem.</i> )	22. vingt-deux
2. deux	23. vingt-trois
3. trois	24. vingt-quatre
4. quatre	25. vingt-cinq
5. cinq <sup>2</sup>	26. vingt-six
6. six <sup>3</sup>	27. vingt-sept
7. sept <sup>4</sup>	28. vingt-huit
8. huit <sup>5</sup>	29. vingt-neuf
9. neuf <sup>6</sup>	30. trente
10. dix <sup>7</sup>	31. trente et un
11. onzième <sup>8</sup>	32. trente-deux
12. douze	40. quarante
13. treize	41. quarante et un
14. quatorze	42. quarante-deux
15. quinze	50. cinquante
16. seize	51. cinquante et un
17. dix-sept	52. cinquante-deux
18. dix-huit	60. soixante
19. dix-neuf	61. soixante et un
20. vingt <sup>9</sup>	62. soixante-deux
21. vingt et un	70. soixante-dix

<sup>1</sup> *Un* is the only cardinal number which has a feminine form.

<sup>2</sup> When standing alone, or at the end of a sentence, these are pronounced *cink*, *siss*, *sett*, *uitt*, *neuf*, *diss*. When they come before a VOWEL or H MUTE, and the liaison is made, the *x* of *six* and *dix*, also of *deux*, is pronounced *z*, the *f* of *neuf* becomes *v* (cf. Introduction, VIII. 6), otherwise the final consonant is silent; e.g. *Il a cin(q) fils*, he has five sons.

<sup>3</sup> The *h* of *huit* is aspirate, so we must write *le huit*, the eighth (in dates), but in compound numbers the *h* becomes mute, and *dix-huit*, *vingt-huit*, are pronounced *di-zuitt*, *vin-tuitt*.

<sup>4</sup> Before *onze* and *onzième* the *e* or *a* of the article is not elided, nor is the *e* of *de* and *que*, e.g. *le onze*, the eleventh (in dates); *il est père de onze enfants*, he is the father of eleven children; therefore the final consonant of a word preceding *onze* is not to be carried on, e.g. *ils étaient(t) onze*, they were eleven.

<sup>5</sup> The *t* is not sounded (*vin*), except in all the numbers from 21 to 29.

71. soixante et onze	95. quatre-vingt-quinze
72. soixante-douze	96. quatre-vingt-seize
73. soixante-treize	97. quatre-vingt-dix-sept
74. soixante-quatorze	98. quatre-vingt-dix-huit
75. soixante-quinze	99. quatre-vingt-dix-neuf
76. soixante-seize	100. cent <sup>2</sup> ( <i>see § 47</i> )
77. soixante-dix-sept	101. cent un <sup>3</sup>
78. soixante-dix-huit	102. cent deux
79. soixante-dix-neuf	200. deux cents ( <i>see § 46</i> )
80. quatre-vingts ( <i>see § 46</i> )	500. cinq cents.
81. quatre-vingt-un	1,000. mille <sup>2</sup> ( <i>see §§ 47, 48 and 49</i> )
82. quatre-vingt-deux	1,500. mille cinq cents, or quinze cents
88. quatre-vingt-huit <sup>1</sup>	3,000. trois mille
90. quatre-vingt-dix	20,000. vingt mille
91. quatre-vingt-onze	1,000,000. un million
92. quatre-vingt-douze	4,000,000. quatre millions <sup>4</sup>
93. quatre-vingt-treize	
94. quatre-vingt-quatorze	

### Notes on the Cardinals.

§ 45. A hyphen is placed between cardinals from 17 to 99, except in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, in which **et**, **and**, is used.

No hyphen ever precedes or follows *cent* or *mille* in a compound number.

Ex. *Trente-neuf*, 39; *quatre-vingt-dix-sept*, 97; *cent onze*, 111; *cent cinquante-quatre*, 154; *trois mille deux cent quarante-cinq*, 3,245; *six mille cinq cent vingt et un*, 6,521.

§ 46. *Vingt* and *cent* take an *s* when they are **multiplied** by a number and **not followed** by another.

Ex. *Quatre-vingts francs*, 80 francs;  
but *quatre-vingt-cinq centimes*, 85 centimes.  
*Trois cents livres sterling*, 300 pounds sterling;  
but *trois cent cinquante pieds*, 350 feet.

<sup>1</sup> In this number the *t* of *vingt* is not sounded.

<sup>2</sup> Never *un cent*, nor *un mille*.

<sup>3</sup> Not *cent et un*.

<sup>4</sup> *Million* is a substantive; note the *s* in the plural. It takes *de* before the following noun, e.g. *un million de francs*, one million francs.

§ 47. As already mentioned in a footnote, *cent* and *mille* are not preceded by *un*, a, one.

Ex. *Cent personnes*, a hundred people.  
*Mille soldats*, one thousand soldiers.

§ 48. The numeral *mille* (a thousand) does not take the sign of the plural, but the substantive *mille* (a mile) forms its plural in the usual way.

Ex. (a) *Cinquante mille habitants*,  
Fifty thousand inhabitants.

(b) *Nous avons fait douze milles à pied*,  
We walked twelve miles (*lit.*, we have made twelve miles on foot).

Cf. *Nous avons fait vingt kilomètres en voiture—en automobile—à cheval—à bicyclette*, we have driven—ridden—twenty kilometres.

§ 49. Mil is used instead of *mille* in dates of the Christian era after 1000 A.D.

Ex. *L'an mil neuf cent onze*, the year 1911.

---

**Learn** the Present, Imperfect and Preterite of the verb *finir* (2nd conjugation, p. 62).

---

## EXERCISE XV.

(a) Write the following numbers in French words: 34, 49, 61, 67, 106, 121, 170, 380, 400, 584, 899, 7,050, 75,000, 840,531.

(b) Translate into French :

1. One thousand francs make (*font*) about (*environ*) forty pounds sterling.
2. The ship was carrying eighty emigrants.
3. This morning we rode twenty-one miles on our bicycles (*à bicyclette*).
4. We have counted thirty-seven trees along (*le long de*) this street.
5. I bought five hundred shares yesterday.
6. King Edward died (*est mort*) in (*en*) the year nineteen hundred and ten, and Queen Victoria, his mother, in nineteen hundred and one.
7. London has more than (*de*) four million inhabitants.
8. The French Senate consists (*se compose*) of three hundred members; there are also five hundred and ninety-one deputies.
9. France is divided into (*se divise en*) eighty-six departments.
10. Eighteen hundred men have perished in that disaster.
11. This estate **has cost** two million francs.

## Notes on the Ordinals.

§ 50. The ordinal numbers, with the exception of those given in the next paragraph, are formed from the cardinals by adding *ième*; if the cardinal ends in *e* mute, that *e* is suppressed before adding *ième*.

Ex. *Trois, troisième*, third; *douze, douzième*, twelfth.

§ 51. The following are the exceptions:

*Un* has two forms: *premier* (fem. *première*) and *unième*; the latter form is used in compound ordinals only, as *le premier*, the first; *le trente et unième*, the thirty-first.

*Deux* gives *second<sup>1</sup>* (fem. *seconde*) and *deuxième*; in compound ordinals *deuxième* alone is used, as:

- (a) *Il est le second* (or *le deuxième*), he is the second.
- (b) *La vingt-deuxième année de son règne*, the twenty-second year of his reign.

*Cinq* adds **u** before the termination *ième*, as *cinq, cinquième*, fifth.

*Neuf* changes *f* into **v**, as *neuf, neuvième*, ninth.

N.B.—Note the abbreviations used in French: *Premier, 1<sup>er</sup>; second, 2<sup>d</sup>; troisième, 3<sup>e</sup>; soixante-sixième, 66<sup>e</sup>*; etc.

§ 52. The cardinal numbers **must be used** instead of the ordinal, **with the exception of premier, first**, as follows:

- (a) In speaking of sovereigns.

Ex. *Edouard sept, Edward VII.*

*Charles premier, Charles I.*

- (b) In quoting a chapter, page, volume, etc.

Ex. *Page quatre cent, page 400.*

*Chapitre quatre-vingt, chapter 80.*

**Note** that *vingt* and *cent* do not take an *s* when they stand for the ordinal; but if the words "chapter," "page," etc., follow the number the ordinal must be used, as: *la vingtième page*, the twentieth page.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *segond*.

## (c) In dates.

Ex. *Le dix-huit octobre*, on the 18th of October.

*Le premier mars*, on the 1st of March.

*Le trois courant*, the 3rd inst.

*Le neuf de l'écoulé*, the 9th ult.

**Note** that *on* and *of* are omitted in French, and no capital is used for the name of the month.

N.B.—When an ordinal and a cardinal are used together, the latter comes first in French.

Ex. *Les vingt premières lignes*, the first twenty lines.

**§ 53. The days of the week and the months of the year.**—These are written with a small letter and are all masculine (cf. § 12).

<i>dimanche</i> , Sunday	<i>mars</i> , March
<i>lundi</i> , Monday	<i>avril</i> , April
<i>mardi</i> , Tuesday	<i>mai</i> , May
<i>mercredi</i> , Wednesday	<i>juin</i> , June
<i>jeudi</i> , Thursday	<i>juillet</i> , July
<i>vendredi</i> , Friday	<i>août</i> , <sup>1</sup> August
<i>samedi</i> , Saturday	<i>septembre</i> , September
<i>janvier</i> , January	<i>octobre</i> , October
<i>février</i> , February	<i>novembre</i> , November
	<i>décembre</i> , December.

Note the following :

(a) *Il travaille le lundi*, he works on Mondays.

(b) *Il arrivera lundi*, he will arrive on Monday.

(c) *Il a congé le mercredi et le samedi*, he has a holiday on Wednesdays and Saturdays.

**§ 54. The Seasons.**—The names of the seasons are all masculine (cf. § 12).

*le printemps*, the spring

*l'été*, the summer

*l'automne*, the autumn

*l'hiver*, the winter.

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *ow* (oo).

*In* before the names of seasons is rendered as follows:

Au *printemps*, in (the) spring.

En *été*, in (the) summer.

En *automne*, in (the) autumn.

En *hiver*, in (the) winter.

**Learn** the Future, Conditional, Imperative, and the Compound tenses of the verb *finir* (pp. 62, 64).

## EXERCISE XVI.

Translate into French:

1. I was born (*je suis né*) on the third of May, 1886.
2. January is the first month of the year and December is the twelfth.
3. We have our holidays in summer.
4. You will find the mistake in the first line of that page.
5. There is no mistake in that line, but there is a misprint in the twenty-first line.
6. You will begin at (*à la*) page two hundred.
7. The King and Queen will open (*le*) Parliament on Tuesday.
8. The audience applauded the first act of the play.
9. They have left Switzerland, and they will arrive here on the first.
10. Has he not asked [for] the first six?
11. In the spring we spend the evenings (*soirée*, f.) in the (*au*) garden.
12. On Sundays we invite a few (*quelques*) friends.
13. We live at number (*au numéro*) eighty, rue de la Paix.
14. Take (*prenez*) the second street on the right (*à droite*) and the fifth on the left (*à gauche*).
15. She will sing at the concert on the 11th inst.

§ 55. **Age** is expressed in French by using the verb *avoir*, to have.

Ex. *Quel âge avez-vous?* how old are you? (*lit.*, what age have you?)

*J'ai dix-neuf ans*, I am nineteen.

*Son frère a vingt-cinq ans*, his brother is twenty-five (twenty-five years old; or twenty-five years of age).

N.B.—The word *an* must never be omitted.

§ 56. **The Time of Day**.—In specifying the time of day, fractions of the hour always follow it.

Ex. *Quelle heure est-il?* what o'clock is it?

*Il est midi*, it is twelve o'clock (noon).

*Il est minuit*, it is twelve o'clock (midnight).

*Il est une heure*, it is one o'clock.

*Il est deux heures et (un) quart*, it is a quarter past two.

*Il est cinq heures moins le (or un) quart*, it is a quarter to five.

*A huit heures et demie*,<sup>1</sup> at half-past eight.

*Neuf heures dix (minutes)*,<sup>2</sup> ten (minutes) past nine.

*Onze heures moins vingt (minutes)*,<sup>2</sup> twenty (minutes) to eleven.

*Vers trois heures*, about three o'clock.

*Six heures m.*,<sup>3</sup> six o'clock a.m.

*Sept heures s.*, seven o'clock p.m.

N.B.—The word *heure* must never be omitted.

§ 57. **Fractions.**—These are expressed by the ordinal numbers except in the case of *un demi*, *une moitié*, one-half; *un tiers*, one-third; *un quart*, one quarter.

Ex. *Les cinq sixièmes de son revenu*, five-sixths of his revenue.

*Trois quarts d'heure*, three-quarters of an hour.

It must be noted that *demi* when preceding a noun is invariable and joined to the latter by a hyphen, as *Une demi-heure*, half an hour; but *une heure et demie*, an hour and a half.

§ 58. **Dimensions.**—The following examples will show how to express dimensions.

(a) *Ce mur a six pieds de long* (or *longueur*), this wall is six feet long. Or

*Ce mur est long de six pieds.*

(b) *Cette pièce a quinze pieds de long* (or *longueur*) *sur* (or *et*) *dix de large* (or *largeur*), this room is fifteen feet long by ten feet wide.

§ 59. **Collectives** are formed by adding *aine* to the cardinals, and are usually followed by *de*; a few have a special meaning.

<sup>1</sup> *Demie* agrees with *heure*, so that with *midi* and *minuit*, which are masculine nouns, we must write *midi et demi* and *minuit et demi*.

<sup>2</sup> The word *minutes* is generally left out in conversation.

<sup>3</sup> *m.* and *s.* stand for *matin* and *soir* respectively.

*Une huitaine* (or *huit jours*), a week.  
*Une dizaine*, half a score, about ten.  
*Une douzaine*, a dozen.  
*Une quinzaine* (or *quinze jours*), a fortnight, about fifteen.  
*Une vingtaine*, a score, about twenty.  
*Une trentaine*, about thirty; and so on with 40, 50, 60, 100.  
*Un millier*, about a thousand.  
*Des centaines d'hommes*, hundreds of men.  
*Des milliers de francs*, thousands of francs.

§ 60. The following phrases which are of every-day occurrence should be learnt:

*Il y a huit jours*, a week ago.  
*D'aujourd'hui en huit*, this day week.  
 " " *quinze*, this day fortnight.  
*Tous les jours*, every day.  
 " " *matins*, every morning.  
 " " *soirs*, every evening.  
 " " *ans*, every year.  
 " " *dimanches*, every Sunday.  
*La semaine prochaine*, next week.  
 " " *dernière*, last week.  
*Mardi prochain*, next Tuesday.  
*Une fois*, once; *deux fois*, twice, etc.  
*Ma montre avance d'un quart d'heure*, my watch is a quarter of an hour fast.  
*Ma montre retarde d'une demi-heure*, my watch is half an hour slow.

### Arithmetical Phrases.

*Six et trois font neuf*, six and three are nine.  
*Quatre ôté de onze reste sept*, four from eleven leaves seven.  
*Trois fois huit font<sup>1</sup> vingt-quatre*, three times eight are twenty-four.  
*En soixante-quatorze combien de fois onze ? Six (fois) et reste huit*, how many elevens (are there) in seventy-four? Six, and eight over,—or, elevens in seventy-four are six, and eight over.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Font* (literally *make*), from *faire* (§245).

## EXERCISE XVII.

Revise the verb *finir* and write the French forms equivalent to the following:

1. We act (*agir*). 2. He used to cure (*guérir*). 3. We will obey (*obéir*). 4. Would they punish? 5. I have succeeded (*réussir*). 6. Do you establish (*établir*)? 7. You filled (*remplir*—pret.). 8. I had chosen (*choisir*). 9. Let us choose. 10. Abolish [ye] (*abolir*). 11. They did not applaud (*applaudir*—pret.) 12. He was shuddering (*frémir*). 13. I shall build (*bâtir*). 14. Would you not demolish (*démolir*)? 15. They had not succeeded, 16. Do we not obey?

Translate into French :

1. We chose a dozen books. 2. He is twenty-five; how old is his sister? 3. We breakfast at half-past seven every morning. 4. At what time do you dine? At half-past twelve. 5. He has given the order; obey. 6. I asked his consent a week ago. 7. My father will be back on Saturday week.<sup>1</sup> 9. This clock is twenty minutes fast. 9. The steamer sails (*part*) every Thursday at four o'clock a.m. 10. Hundreds of Germans visit this castle every year. 11. He will return next year;<sup>2</sup> he will have been away (*absent*) about ten years. 12. They would cure thousands of children if the hospital were (imperf.) larger. 13. The offices will close in half an hour. 14. The train leaves Paris at midnight, and does not arrive at Marseilles before two o'clock p.m. 15. They filled (imperf.) the reservoir three times a week. 16. Let us buy half a pound of cherries and three-quarters of a pound of grapes. 17. The village is (at) about ten kilometres from the station. 18. I have about fifty rose-trees in my garden. 19. This field is seventy metres long by thirty-one wide. 20. We shall spend a fortnight at the seaside (*au bord de la mer*).

## CHAPTER X.

### Personal Pronouns. (*Pronoms personnels.*)

§ 61. Personal pronouns are divided into **conjunctive** and **disjunctive**; the former are used in conjunction with verbs and the latter in other cases.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *this day week*, § 60.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *next week*, § 60.

<sup>3</sup> See § 10.

The following is a table showing how they are declined<sup>1</sup> in French:

	<b>Conjunctive.</b>			<b>Disjunctive.</b>
<i>Subject.</i> (Nominative.)	<i>Direct Object.</i> (Accusative.)	<i>Indirect Object.</i> (Dative.)		<i>Subject or Direct Object.</i> (Nom. or Acc.)
<i>je</i> , <sup>2</sup> I	<i>me</i> , <sup>*</sup> me	<i>me</i> , to me		<i>moi</i> , I, me
<i>tu</i> , thou	<i>te</i> , thee	<i>te</i> , to thee		<i>toi</i> , thou, thee
<i>il</i> , he, it	<i>le</i> , him, it	<i>lui</i> , to him		<i>lui</i> , he, him, it
<i>elle</i> , she, it	<i>la</i> , her, it	<i>lui</i> , to her		<i>elle</i> , she, her, it
<i>nous</i> , we	<i>nous</i> , us	<i>nous</i> , to us		<i>nous</i> , we, us
<i>vous</i> , you	<i>vous</i> , you	<i>vous</i> , to you		<i>vous</i> , you
<i>ils</i> , m. } they	<i>les</i> , them	<i>leur</i> , to them		<i>eux</i> , m. } they,
<i>elles</i> , f. }				<i>elles</i> , f. } them.

The dative of the disjunctive pronouns is formed by prefixing *à*, to.

§ 62. **En, y.**—To the above may be added *en*, of or from it, of them, some, any, thence; and *y*, to or in it, to them, there.

### Conjunctive Pronouns.

§ 63. **Position and Order.**—Conjunctive pronouns used as the object (direct or indirect) precede the verb, as:

*Je le donne*, I give it.

*Il m'a parlé*, he has spoken to me.

Except in the **imperative affirmative**, when (1) they follow the verb and are joined to it by a hyphen, (2) *me* and *te* are replaced by *moi* and *toi*, as:

*Envoyez-les à votre frère*, send them to your brother.

*Donnez-moi de l'argent*, give me some money.

But *Ne me donnez pas d'argent*, do not give me any money.

§ 64. If there are two governed pronouns, the **indirect object precedes the direct**, unless both are of the third

<sup>1</sup> There are really no cases in modern French; we use the term here for convenience' sake.

<sup>2</sup> *Je* is written with a capital letter at the beginning of a sentence only.

<sup>3</sup> *Tu* and *te* are used in addressing children, intimate friends, and near relatives.

<sup>4</sup> *Me*, *te*, *le*, *la*, become *m'*, *t'*, *l'* before a vowel or silent *h*.

person, in which case the accusatives **le, la, les** precede the datives **lui, leur**.

Ex. *Je vous le prête*, I lend it to you.

*Je ne vous l'ai pas donné*, I have not given it to you.

*Nous le lui prêterons*, we shall lend it to him.

With the imperative affirmative the **direct precedes the indirect**, as :

*Apportez-le-nous*, bring it to us.

*Donnez-les-moi*, give them to me.

§ 65. **Y** and **en** used with other pronouns **follow** them, **en** coming last.

Ex. *Je lui en ai donné*, I have given him some.

*Je vous y en enverrai*, I will send you some there.

§ 66. The pronouns *me, te, le, la, moi* and *toi* suffer elision before **y** and **en**.

*Donnez-m'en*, give me some.

*Je l'y apporterai*, I will bring it there.

§ 67. The pronouns **le, la, les**, are used in French after the verb *être* where no pronoun is required in English. When referring to an adjective or a noun used adjectively **le** alone is employed.

Ex. (a) *Êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant ? Je la suis.*

Are you the mother of this child ? I am.

(b) *Êtes-vous les officiers de ce régiment ? Nous les sommes.*

Are you the officers of that regiment ? We are.

But (c) *Êtes-vous prêts ? Nous le sommes.*

Are you ready ? We are.

(d) *Sont-ils officiers ? Ils le sont.*

Are they officers ? They are.

§ 68. **En** is also frequently employed to represent a preceding substantive which is unrepresented in English, as :

*Combien de frères avez-vous ? J'en ai trois.*

How many brothers have you ? I have three.

*Avez-vous un canif ? Oui, j'en ai un.*

Have you a penknife ? Yes, I have (one).

## EXERCISE XVIII.

Translate into French :

1. I gave it to my brother.
  2. He has looked for it in my bedroom.
  3. Lend it to us, but do not give it to them.
  4. He has sent them some.
  5. I will bring you your umbrella when I have (*say*, I shall have) found it.
  6. Here are<sup>1</sup> your letters; the postman has just brought them (*vient de les apporter*).
  7. Introduce me to your friend, please.
  8. We showed it to him.
  9. Does he like strawberries? Yes, he has eaten some.
  10. I praised her, but I blamed him.
  11. This clever doctor cured me in a month.
  12. Here is my glass; do not fill it.
  13. The law will punish him; he deserves it.
  14. I have chosen two kinds; I will show them to you.
  15. You will have some to-morrow; I will send you some there.
  16. Have you cleaned my boots? Yes, sir; here they are.
  17. Are these children ill?
  18. How many persons were there at the ball? There were two hundred.
  19. Are you the governess of that little girl? I am not.
  20. Show me a straw hat, please.
- 

### Disjunctive Pronouns.

§ 69. The disjunctive pronouns are used:

(a) Alone, in answer to a question, as:

*Qui est là?* Moi. Who is there? I.

*Qui a parlé?* Lui. Who spoke? He did.

(b) After the verb **être**, (*to be*), preceded by the demonstrative pronoun **ce**, it; and **after prepositions**, as:

*Est-ce lui?* Is it he?

*Ce sont eux.* It is they.

*Il a diné avec moi.* He has dined with me.

*Vous penserez à eux.*<sup>2</sup> You will think of them.

(c) After a comparative followed by **que** or as the direct object of a transitive verb accompanied by **ne...que**<sup>3</sup> (*only*), as:

*Elle est plus âgée que moi.* She is older than I.

*Je n'ai trouvé que lui.* I found only him.

---

<sup>1</sup> Here is, here are = *voici*; here he is = **le voici**; here they are = **les voici**. There is, there are (when pointing to a person or thing) = *voilà*; there she is = **la voilà**.

<sup>2</sup> To think of = *penser à*.

<sup>3</sup> Only accompanying a verb is usually rendered by **ne...que**, *ne* being placed before and *que* after the verb. Ex. *Je n'ai que dix francs*, I have only ten francs.

(d) As the antecedent to a relative pronoun, to emphasize a conjunctive pronoun, or in exclamations, as:

*Lui, qui est votre ami, vous aidera.*

He, who is your friend, will help you.

*Vous n'aimez pas ce tableau, et moi je l'admire.*

You do not like this picture, and I admire it.

*Eux, acheter cette maison ! Jamais !*

They buy that house ! Never !

(e) When a personal pronoun (subject or object) is joined to another pronoun or to a noun by *et*, and, *ou*, or, as:

*Lui et moi, nous sommes bons amis.*

He and I are good friends.

*Toi ou ton frère resterez à la maison.*

You or your brother will remain at home.

N.B.—When the subjects or objects are of different persons, they are summed up in one *conjunctive* pronoun, as in the first example.

§ 70. The disjunctive pronouns strengthened by **même**, self (plural **mêmes**, selves), are used as reflexive pronouns or emphatically, as:

*Je l'ai écrit moi-même.* I have written it myself.

*Eux-mêmes l'ont dit.* They said it themselves.

---

**Learn** the Present, Imperfect and Preterite Indicative of the verb *recevoir* (3rd conjugation; p. 63).

---

## EXERCISE XIX.

Translate into French :

1. It is they who (*qui*) will stay here. 2. My brother is more experienced than he [is]. 3. We shall dine without you (2nd singular) if you are late (*si tu es en retard*). 4. She likes the country, but I prefer (*préfère*) the town. 5. He, (to) betray the best of his friends ! I shall not forgive him (*lui*). 6. Whom (*qui*) do you blame ? Them, I suppose. 7. I received a letter from him this morning. 8. She and her brother will meet the guests at the station. 9. The manager receives the correspondence ; write (*écrivez*) to him. 10. Come (*venez*) with me ; I will show them to you. 11. They, who had forgotten their neighbours, received a reward. 12. I found only him ; she and her mother were out (*étaient sorties*).

## CHAPTER XI.

### Possessive Pronouns. (Pronoms possessifs.)

§ 71. The possessive pronouns are :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
<i>le mien</i>	<i>la mienne</i>	<i>les miens</i>	<i>les miennes</i> , mine
<i>le tien</i>	<i>la tienne</i>	<i>les tiens</i>	<i>les tiennes</i> , thine
<i>le sien</i>	<i>la sienne</i>	<i>les siens</i>	<i>les siennes</i> , his, hers, its
<i>le nôtre</i>	<i>la nôtre</i>	<i>les nôtres</i> ,	ours
<i>le vôtre</i>	<i>la vôtre</i>	<i>les vôtres</i> ,	yours
<i>le leur</i>	<i>la leur</i>	<i>les leurs</i> ,	theirs.

N.B.—The prepositions **de** and **à** preceding these pronouns contract with the articles **le**, **les** (see § 2), as:

<i>du mien</i>	} of mine.	<i>au mien</i>	} to mine.
<i>des miens</i>		<i>aux miens</i>	
<i>des miennes</i>		<i>aux miennes</i>	
<i>du vôtre</i>	} of yours.	<i>au vôtre</i>	} to yours ; etc.
<i>des vôtres</i>		<i>aux vôtres</i>	

§ 72. Possessive pronouns **agree** in gender and number with the **noun** to which they refer, as :

(a) *Votre maison est plus vaste que la mienne.*  
Your house is more roomy than mine.

(b) *Mes amis sont ici ; les vôtres sont en retard.*  
My friends are here ; yours are late.

§ 73. After the verb **être** a disjunctive personal pronoun governed by the preposition **à** frequently replaces a possessive pronoun, as :

*Ces livres sont à eux* } These books are theirs.  
*Ces livres sont les leurs* }

*Cette automobile est-elle à vous ?* Is this motor-car yours ?

For such phrases as *a friend of mine* see § 40.

## CHAPTER XII.

### Demonstrative Pronouns. (Pronoms démonstratifs.)

§ 74. The demonstrative pronouns are :

- (1) *ce*, this, that, it.
- (2) *ceci*, this; *cela*, that.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
(3) <i>celui</i> ,	<i>celle</i> ,	<i>ceux</i> ,	<i>celles</i> ,
he, she, that, the one.		they, those, the ones.	

(4) *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*,  
this one or the latter.  
*celui-là*, *celle-là*,  
that one or the former.

*ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*,  
these or the latter.  
*ceux-là*, *celles-là*,  
those or the former.

§ 75. **Ce**, demonstrative pronoun, must not be confused with *ce*, demonstrative adjective. The latter is always followed by a noun, whilst **ce** pronoun is invariable and either accompanies the verb *être* or the verbs **devoir**, *to be obliged*, and **pouvoir**, *to be able*, followed by *être*.

**Ce** preceding a relative pronoun is dealt with in § 85.

Ex. (a) *C'est un homme de génie.*

He is a man of genius.

(b) *Ce doit être son grand-père.*

It must be his grandfather.

§ 76. **Ceci** and **cela** never refer to a noun ; they stand for something pointed at, but not named, as :

*Ceci est bon, mais cela est mauvais.*

This is good, but that is bad.

§ 77. **Celui**, **celle**, **ceux**, **celles** usually refer to a substantive preceding, and agree with it in gender and number ; they are always followed by **de** or a relative pronoun (**qui**, **que**, **dont**, etc.).

Ex. (a) *Les murs de l'église sont plus hauts que ceux de notre maison.*

The walls of the church are higher than those of our house.

(b) *Voici une plume, mais où est celle que vous cherchez ?*

Here is a pen, but where is the one (which) you are looking for ?

- (c) Celui qui arrivera le premier, gagnera le prix.  
He (or the one) who arrives first, will gain the prize.

Note: Celui de mon père, my father's; and similar phrases.

§ 78. **Celui-ci**, **celui-là**, etc., are used to refer to objects already mentioned, and they vary according to the gender and number of the noun to which they relate; **celui-ci** referring to the **nearer** object, **celui-là** to the more **remote**, as:

- (a) Voilà deux lettres ; celle-ci est de votre frère, et celle-là est de votre père.

There are two letters ; this one is from your brother, and that one is from your father.

- (b) Vos livres sont plus intéressants que ceux-là.  
Your books are more interesting than those.

**Learn** the Future, Conditional, Imperative and compound tenses of the Indicative of the verb *recevoir* (pp. 63 and 64).

## EXERCISE XX.

Translate into French :

1. Is not this horse (of) the same colour as (*que*) mine ? 2. His conduct was that of a madman.
3. It was (*C'est*) Charles who built this house and theirs.
4. Who (*qui*) are those two ladies ? This one is a great actress ; that one is Mrs. B.
5. Was that dictionary the one [which] I lent you ?
6. Which (*laquelle*) of the two streets is it ? This one or that one ?
7. Your efforts and his would be quite useless.
8. Give this to the man and that to the woman.
9. Here is my umbrella, but where is yours ?
10. This bag is my cousin's (*say*, that of my cousin, *or* to my cousin ; § 73).
11. It must be the word [which] (*qui*) he was looking for.
12. Do not eat that ; it is not good.
13. I am writing (*j'écris*) to my colleague ; have you written (*écrit*) to yours ?
14. Has she finished her work ? I shall have finished mine in a quarter of an hour.
15. Are you reading (*lisez-vous*) to-day's paper (*say*, the paper of to-day) ? No, I am reading (*je lis*) that of yesterday.
16. These envelopes are similar to ours.
17. Walk with my sister, and I will walk with yours.
18. This is mine and that is theirs.
19. Here are the two sheets ; correct this one and I will correct that one.
20. I saw (*apercevoir*) him at the theatre ; he was with a friend of his.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### Relative Pronouns. (Pronoms relatifs.)

§ 79. The relative pronouns are *qui* and *lequel*, meaning *who*, *which*, *that*.

§ 80. *Qui* is declined as follows for both singular and plural :

RELATING TO PERSONS.	RELATING TO ANIMALS AND THINGS
Nom. <i>qui</i> , who.	<i>qui</i> , which, that.
Gen. <i>de qui</i> or <i>dont</i> , of whom.	<i>dont</i> , of which.
Dat. <i>à qui</i> , to whom.	( <i>auquel</i> , etc.), to which.
Acc. { <i>que</i> (as object of a verb), <i>qui</i> (after a preposition),	<i>que</i> (as object of a verb), <i>lequel</i> , etc. (after a preposition), which, that.

§ 81. *Lequel* is declined thus :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>lequel</i> <i>laquelle</i> <i>lesquels</i> <i>lesquelles</i> , which.	
Gen. <i>duquel</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>de laquelle</i> <i>desquels</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>desquelles</i> , of which.	
Dat. <i>auquel</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>à laquelle</i> <i>auxquels</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>auxquelles</i> , to which	
Acc. <i>lequel</i> <i>laquelle</i> <i>lesquels</i> <i>lesquelles</i> , which.	

§ 82. Examples illustrating the use of *qui* and *lequel*.

(a) *L'homme qui vous parlait est aveugle.*

The man who was speaking to you is blind.

(b) *L'homme dont (or duquel, or de qui<sup>2</sup>) je vous ai parlé.*

The man of whom I spoke to you.

(c) *La dame à qui (or à laquelle) j'écris.*

The lady to whom I am writing.

(d) *Le cheval qu'il<sup>3</sup> a acheté est boiteux.*

The horse (which) he bought is lame.

N.B.—The relative pronouns *dont* and *que* must always be expressed in French, whilst in English they may be understood.

<sup>1</sup> It will be noticed that the prepositions *de* and *à* combine with *le* and *les* to give **duquel**, **auxquels**, etc.; one must therefore not say *de lequel*, *à lesquels*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *De qui* and *duquel* are seldom used, *dont* being preferred.

<sup>3</sup> *Que* becomes *qu'* before a vowel; the *i* of *qui* is never elided (cf. Introd. III., elision of *i*).

(e) *L'ami avec qui (or lequel) j'ai diné.*

The friend with whom I dined.

§ 83. **Lequel, laquelle, etc., must** be used:

(1) To avoid ambiguity, as in:—

*Je pense à la fille de mon ami, laquelle est très malade.*

I am thinking of my friend's daughter, who is very ill. If we used *qui*, it might be taken to mean that the friend, not his daughter, was ill.

(2) After a preposition when referring to animals or things, and always after **parmi**, *among*, to whatever they may refer.

Ex. (a) *La plume avec laquelle j'ai signé.*

The pen with which I have signed.

(b) *Les gens parmi lesquels je me trouve.*

The people among whom I am (*lit.*, I find myself).

(c) *Ces chevaux parmi lesquels sont les miens.*

These horses among which are mine.

(3) In the genitive (instead of *dont*) when they do not immediately follow their antecedent, as:

*L'homme au courage duquel je dois la vie.*

The man to whose courage I owe my life.

[The antecedent is the noun to which the relative pronoun refers.]

Note the order of the words after **dont**: *L'homme dont j'admiré le talent*, the man whose talent I admire. We see, 1st, that the order is the same as in English, if we translate *dont* by "of whom"; 2nd, that the article is **not** omitted.

§ 84. **Où**, *where, when*, is often used instead of *lequel*, etc., preceded by the preposition *à*, to, *de*, from, *dans*, in, when speaking of PLACE, TIME, or MEANS; thus, we get *d'où* for *duquel*, *où* for *dans lequel*, etc.

Ex. (a) *La rue où (for dans laquelle) j'habite*, the street in which I live.

(b) *La porte par où il entra*, the door by which he came in.

§ 85. **Ce qui.** The demonstrative pronoun **ce** combined with **qui** gives the English equivalent *what, that which*. Ce qui is declined as follows:

- Nom. *ce qui*, what, that which.  
 Gen. *ce dont*, of what, that of which.  
 Dat. *ce à quoi*, to what, that to which.  
 Acc. *ce que*, what, that which.

Ex. (a) *Demandez-lui ce qu'il a choisi*, ask him what he has chosen.  
 (b) *Mangez ce qui est bon*, eat what is good.

*Ce qui* may also refer to some fact stated previously, equivalent to "a thing which," as: *Il l'a oublié, ce qui m'étonne*, he has forgotten it, which (a thing which) surprises me.

---

Revise the verb *recevoir* (pp. 63, 64) and §§ 117 and 118 on the interrogative conjugation.

---

## EXERCISE XXI.

(a) Write the French for the following:

1. I perceive (*apercevoir*). 2. We conceive (*concevoir*) the idea.
3. They deceive (*décevoir*). 4. They collected (*percevoir*<sup>1</sup>). 5. Was he perceiving? 6. He did not conceive (pret.) the plan. 7. Will he deceive? 8. Would they not collect? 9. Did the man perceive?
10. Had the child not deceived? 11. You are not deceiving. 12. Used you to deceive?

(b) Translate into French:

1. The present which he has received is very fine.
2. Here is the lady of whom you speak; introduce me.
3. Come in and tell me (*dites-moi*) what you have noticed.
4. Will he succeed in the work he has begun?<sup>2</sup>
5. The stranger to whom I was speaking is an American.
6. They would admire what you have chosen.
7. This elephant, whose strength is so great, is sometimes very fierce.
8. The door by which the artists enter (into) the theatre is closed (*fermée*).
9. These workmen are pulling down the house in which I lived for (*pendant*) twenty years.
10. I have broken the chair on which you were sitting (*vous étiez assis*).
11. I have met the man on whom you rely.
12. The singer whose voice you are admiring is quite (*tout*) young.
13. He does not know (*il ne sait pas*) what he wants.
14. He tried to (*de*) swim, which amused us very much.<sup>3</sup>
15. The difficulty of which you speak (you speak of) is not very great.

<sup>1</sup> To collect taxes, rates, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Do not forget to apply the Rule in § 82, N.B.    <sup>3</sup> See § 36, N.B.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### Interrogative Adjectives and Pronouns. (Adjectifs et pronoms interrogatifs.)

§ 86. The only interrogative adjective is **quel**?—which? what?

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Masc. <i>quel</i>	<i>quels</i> }
Fem. <i>quelle</i> .	<i>quelles</i> } which? what?

Ex. (a) *Quel jour arriveront-ils?* What day will they arrive?

(b) *Quelle heure-est-il?* What time is it?

(c) *Quelle est la lettre que vous avez reçue?* Which is the letter you have received?

§ 87. **Quel** is also used in exclamations, and corresponds to *What a...!* as:

*Quelle belle rose!* What a fine rose!

*Quel dommage!* What a pity!

§ 88. The interrogative pronouns are **qui?**—who? **que?**—what? **lequel?**—which? which one?

They are declined as follows:

Nom. <i>qui?</i> who?	<i>que?</i> what?
Gen. <i>de qui?</i> <sup>1</sup> of whom?	<i>de quoi?</i> of what?
Dat. <i>à qui?</i> to whom?	<i>à quoi?</i> to what?
Acc. <i>qui?</i> <sup>1</sup> whom?	<i>que?</i> what?

**Lequel** is declined like the relative pronoun *lequel* (see § 81).

§ 89. **Qui?** and **que?** are often replaced by **qui est-ce qui?** and **qu'est-ce qui?** respectively, especially in conversation; these are declined thus:

Nom. <i>qui est-ce qui?</i> who?	<i>qu'est-ce qui?</i> what?
Gen. <i>de qui est-ce que?</i> of whom?	<i>de quoi est-ce que?</i> of what?
Dat. <i>à qui est-ce que?</i> to whom?	<i>à quoi est-ce que?</i> to what?
Acc. <i>qui est-ce que?</i> whom?	<i>qu'est-ce que?</i> what?

<sup>1</sup> Note that the genitive is not *dont*, which is never used as an interrogative pronoun, and that the accusative is **qui?** and not **que?**

§ 90. Examples of *qui*:

- (a) Qui a dessiné cela?      } Who has drawn  
          Qui est-ce qui a dessiné cela? } that?
- (b) De qui parlez-vous?      } Of whom are you  
          De qui est-ce que vous parlez? } speaking?
- (c) A qui écrivez-vous?      } To whom are you  
          A qui est-ce que vous écrivez? } writing?
- (d) Qui a-t-il trouvé?      } Whom did he find?  
          Qui est-ce qu'il a trouvé? }

§ 91. Examples of *que*:

- (a) Qu'est-ce qui<sup>1</sup> vous dérange? What troubles you?
- (b) De quoi ont-ils besoin?      } What do they want  
          De quoi est-ce qu'ils ont besoin? } (i.e. need)?
- (c) A quoi pensez-vous<sup>2</sup>?      } What are you think-  
          A quoi est-ce que vous pensez? } ing of?
- (d) Que mange-t-il?      } What is he eating?  
          Qu'est-ce qu'il mange? }

§ 92. **Lequel?** **laquelle?** etc., is used to denote a preference, a choice of persons or things among a number; it must not be used before a noun unless **de** follows it.

Ex. Voici plusieurs montres; laquelle préférez-vous?  
Here are several watches; which (one) do you prefer?  
Lequel de ces messieurs est votre associé?  
Which of these gentlemen is your partner?

§ 93. **Quoi** is used: (a) after prepositions (cf. *de quoi* and *à quoi*, § 88); (b) in exclamations.

Ex. (a) Avec quoi préparez-vous cela? With what do you prepare that?  
(b) Quoi! vous partez? What! you are going?

Note: *Quoi de nouveau?* What's the news? *Il n'y a pas de quoi.* Don't mention it.

§ 94. **Whose?** The English possessive *whose?* cannot be translated literally; **à qui** is used, followed by the verb *être*.

<sup>1</sup> *Que?* is seldom used in the nominative.

<sup>2</sup> It has already been pointed out that *to think of* is, in French, *penser à*.

Ex. A qui est ce pardessus? Whose is this overcoat?  
 A qui est le parapluie que vous avez? Whose umbrella have you got?

---

Learn the Present, Imperfect and Preterite of the verb *vendre*,  
 4th conjugation (p. 63).

---

## EXERCISE XXII.

Translate into French:—

1. Which room do you want?
  2. What had he told (*raconter*) you?
  3. Whose money was it? It was his brother's.<sup>1</sup>
  4. What! they have threatened him!
  5. What are they working at?<sup>2</sup>
  6. Which of these explanations will you accept?
  7. What hurts you (*vous fait mal*)?
  8. [On] what day would they arrive?
  9. By whom have you sent the parcel?
  10. Of which of these countries are you speaking?
  11. What did you perceive?
  12. At which station have you left your luggage?
  13. What were you eating? Cherries and strawberries.
  14. What did he die of (*est-il mort*)?
  15. Which train are you waiting [for]? We are waiting [for] the steamboat.
  16. By which staircase did you go down?
  17. Which of these singers have you heard (*entendus*<sup>3</sup>)?
  18. With whom did you correspond?
- 

## CHAPTER XV.

### Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns.

(Adjectifs et pronoms indéfinis.)

§ 95. Many indefinite adjectives can also be used as indefinite pronouns. In the following list those marked with an asterisk (\*) are adjectives when used in connection with a noun; if used alone they are indefinite pronouns.

#### SINGULAR.

MASCULINE. FEMININE. MASCULINE. FEMININE.

*aucun	aucune	aucuns	aucunes	no, none, not any
*nul	nulle	nuls	nulles	
certain	certaine	certains	certaines	certain, some

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 77, note.

<sup>2</sup> Say *at what*. (See also § 186.)

<sup>3</sup> See § 137 for the agreement of the past participle conjugated with *avoir*.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

MASCULINE. FEMININE. MASCULINE. FEMININE.

(le) même	(la) même	(les) mêmes	(the) same, self (see § 70)
*tout	toute	tous	toutes, all, every
*tel	telle	tels	telles, such
*autre	autre	autres	autres, other
plusieurs	(invariable)		several
*l'un et	l'une et	les uns et	les unes et
l'autre	l'autre	les autres	les autres, both
*l'un ou	l'une ou	les uns ou	les unes ou
l'autre	l'autre	les autres	les autres, either
*ni l'un ni	ni l'une ni	ni les uns ni	ni les unes
l'autre	l'autre	les autres	ni les autres, neither.

§ 96. The following have different forms :

## ADJECTIVES.

*chaque* (invariable), each, every*quelque*, some*quelques*, some, a few*quel...que*, *quelle...que*,*quels...que*, *quelles...que*, whatever*quelconque* (m. & f.), *quel-* conques, whatever, whatsoever

## PRONOUNS.

*chacun*, *chacune*, every one, each*quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*, some, someone, somebody, anybody*quelques-uns*, *quelques-unes*, some, a few*qui que*, whoever*quoi que*, whatever*quiconque*, whoever, whosoever

§ 97. The following are used as indefinite pronouns only :

*l'un*, *l'une*, the one                   *les uns*, *les unes*, the ones, some*l'un l'autre*, *l'une l'autre*, }                   one another, each other*les uns les autres*,*les unes les autres*,*on*, one, we, they, people*quelque chose*,<sup>1</sup> something, anything*personne*,<sup>1</sup> nobody, no one

}

one another, each other

*rien*, nothing*autre chose*,<sup>1</sup> something else,

anything else.

<sup>1</sup> *Personne*, *quelque chose*, indefinite pronouns, are masculine, and must not be confused with the feminine nouns *une personne* = a person, and *une chose* = a thing.

### Notes on the Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns.

§ 98. **Aucun, nul, rien, personne**, require the negative **ne** before the verb.

- Ex. (a) *Vous n'avez aucun ami*, you have no friend.  
 (b) *Nul homme n'est parfait*, no man is perfect.  
 (c) *Je n'ai rien accepté*, I have accepted nothing.  
 (d) *Je n'ai rencontré personne*, I have met nobody.

N.B.—Observe that **rien**, when direct object (Ex. c), occupies the same place as **pas** (e.g. *Je n'ai pas accepté*).

§ 99. **Quelqu'un, personne, quelque chose, rien**, require **de** before an adjective following, and this adjective is put in the masculine singular.

- Ex. (a) *Je cherche quelqu'un de courageux*, I am looking for someone brave.  
 (b) *Y a-t-il quelque chose de nouveau?* Is there something (or anything) new?  
 (c) *Il n'y a rien de vrai dans cette histoire*, there is nothing true in that story.

§ 100. **L'un l'autre**. When this pronoun is governed by a preposition, that preposition is placed between *l'un* and *l'autre*, and not before as in English, as:

*Il parlent l'un de l'autre*, they speak of one another.

§ 101. **L'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre**. With these the construction is also different from the English when they are preceded by a preposition.

- Ex. (a) *Avez-vous reçu des nouvelles de l'un ou de l'autre?* Have you heard (lit., received news) from either?  
 (b) *Je n'ai<sup>1</sup> reçu de nouvelles ni de l'un ni de l'autre*, I have heard from neither.

§ 102. **Tel**, such, is never followed by the indefinite article in French, as:

*Une telle action mérite une récompense*, such an action deserves a reward.

If the noun is accompanied by an adjective *tel* is replaced by **si**, as:

- (a) *Un si bel homme*, such a fine man.  
 (b) *Une mer si calme*, such a calm sea.

---

<sup>1</sup> Observe that **ni l'un ni l'autre** takes **ne** with the verb, like **aucun, nul**, etc. (§ 98).

Note the expressions:

*Monsieur un tel*, Mr. So-and-so.

*Madame, Mademoiselle une telle*, Mrs., Miss So-and-so.

§ 103. **L'on** is used instead of **on** after a vowel sound, especially after *et, ou, où, que, si*, unless followed by *le, la, les, lui, or leur*.

Ex. (a) *Si l'on parle*, if one speaks.

But (b) *Si on lui parle*, if one speaks to him.

§ 104. **Tout**, adjective, is usually **followed** by the definite article, as:

*Toute la semaine*, all the week, the whole week.

*Tous les hommes sont mortels*, all men are mortal.

Note: **Tous les** is frequently used instead of *chaque, every*. (Cf. § 60, phrases.)

*Je l'attends tous les jours à quatre heures*, I wait for him every day at four o'clock.

Learn the Future, Conditional, Imperative, and compound tenses of the Indicative of the verb *vendre* (pp. 63 and 64).

### EXERCISE XXIII.

Translate into French :

1. He listened carefully and heard something important.
2. Each gave me a share of his money.
3. The whole nation is in mourning; everyone is wearing black clothes.
4. Nothing seemed (imperf.) easier, and yet no one could (*pouvait*) do it.
5. Several members of the jury were of the same opinion.
6. Which of these bicycles is yours? Neither.
7. You will wait [for] neither (plural).
8. They (*on*) assured him that either of the generals might be appointed (past cond.).
9. Each month the government sends (*envoie*) provisions to the island.
10. Something extraordinary has happened (*est arrivé*), no carriage has moved.
11. They say (*on dit*) that he will do (*fera*) it for neither (feminine).
12. If people (*on*) ask you why you do not take your hat off (*enlever* = to take off), what will you answer?
13. Eat these peaches, leave the others for to-morrow.
14. You will find it scratched out (*effacé*) on (*à*) every page.
15. Has he not replied to all your letters?
16. Each of these nations has a powerful fleet.
17. They live (*habiter*) [in] such a beautiful house.
18. Has not your doctor cured some of those who were ill?
19. Some were killed, others were wounded, a few escaped.
20. Is there anybody [<sup>2</sup>] foolish enough to (*pour*) defend him?

## CHAPTER XVI.

### Verbs. (Verbes.)

The student should read the following paragraphs (§105 to §113) before and after learning the four conjugations.

#### Stem. Termination.

§ 105. A French verb is always formed of two distinct parts: the **stem** or **root**, which generally remains unaltered, and the **termination** or **ending**, which varies according to the mood, tense, number, and person.

Thus, in *aimer*, *finir*, *recevoir*, *vendre*, *aim*, *fin*, *recev*, *vend*, constitute the **stem**, and *er*, *ir*, *oir*, *re*, the **ending**.

#### Moods.

§ 106. There are in French **five** moods: the **Infinitive**, the **Indicative**, the **Imperative**, the **Conditional**, and the **Subjunctive**.

§ 107. The **Infinitive** mood has a present and a past tense.

PRESENT: *aimer*, to love.

PAST: *avoir aimé*, to have loved.

§ 108. The **Indicative** mood has four simple tenses—

PRESENT: *j'aime*, I love, I am loving, I do love.

IMPERFECT: *j'aimais*, I loved, I was loving, I used to love, I did love.

PRETERITE: *j'aimai*, I loved, I did love.

FUTURE: *j'aimerai*, I shall or will love,

and four compound tenses—

PAST INDEFINITE: *j'ai aimé*, I have loved.

PLUPERFECT: *j'avais aimé*, I had loved.

PAST ANTERIOR: *j'eus aimé*, I had loved.

FUTURE ANTERIOR: *j'aurai aimé*, I shall have loved.

§ 109. The **Imperative** mood has two tenses, of which only the present is generally used<sup>1</sup>—

PRESENT: aime, love (thou).

§ 110. The **Conditional** mood has two tenses, one simple and one compound—

PRESENT: j'aimerais, I should *or* would love.

PAST: j'aurais aimé, I should *or* would have loved.

The **Subjunctive** mood has two simple tenses—

PRESENT: que j'aime, that I may love.

IMPERFECT: que j'aimasse, that I might love,

and two compound tenses—

PERFECT: que j'aie aimé, that I may have loved.

PLUPERFECT: que j'eusse aimé, that I might have loved.

§ 111. **Participles.**—In addition to the above tenses, there are two simple participles—

PRESENT: aimant, loving.

PAST: aimé, loved,

and one compound participle—

ayant aimé, having loved.

### Conjugations.

§ 112. There are four conjugations in French, which are distinguished by the termination of the infinitive.<sup>2</sup>

The first ends in *er*, as *aimer*, to love.

The second „ *ir*, as *finir*, to finish.

The third „ *oir*, as *recevoir*, to receive.

The fourth „ *re*, as *vendre*, to sell.

### Tenses.

§ 113. The tenses are divided into **primitive** and **derived**.

There are **five** primitive tenses, from which the others may be formed<sup>3</sup> in the following manner:

<sup>1</sup> Example of the compound form of the Imperative: *Ayez fini quand il arrivera*, have finished when he arrives.

<sup>2</sup> For the majority of students this arrangement will probably be simpler than if the conjugations were classified according to their derivation.

<sup>3</sup> It is not correct to say that all the other tenses are formed from the primitive tenses; the above is given merely to facilitate the study of verbs.

### The PRESENT INFINITIVE forms:

1. The **Future** by adding the endings of the Present Indicative of *avoir*: *ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont*.

*Aimer, j'aimerai ; finir, je finirai.*

2. The **Conditional Present** by adding the endings of the Imperfect of *avoir*: *ais, aïs, ait, ions, iez, aient*.

*Aimer, j'aimerais ; finir, je finirais.*

Note I. In the *third* conjugation the letters *oi* must be suppressed from the Infinitive before the endings are added. *Recev[oi]r, je recevrai, je recevrais.*

Note II. In the *fourth* conjugation the final *e* is suppressed before adding the endings. *Vendr[e], je vendrai, je vendrais.*

### The PRESENT PARTICIPLE forms:

1. The **plural of the Present Indicative** by changing *ant* into *ons, ez, ent*.

*Aimant, nous aimons ; finissant, vous finissez ; recevant, ils reçoivent.* (See Note III.)

2. The **Imperfect Indicative** by changing *ant* into *ais, aïs, ait, ions, iez, aient*.

*Recevant, je recevais ; vendant, je vendais.*

3. The **Present Subjunctive** by changing *ant* into *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent*.

*Aimant, que j'aime ; finissant, que je finisse ; recevant, que je reçoive.* (See Note III.)

Note III. In verbs of the *third* conjugation :

(a) The *e* of the syllable *ce* becomes *oi* in the third person plural of the Present Indicative, in the same person of the Present Subjunctive, and in the three persons of the singular of the Present Subjunctive.

(b) A *cedilla* is placed under the *c* before *o* and *u*, to preserve the soft sound of the *c*. (Cf. Introd. VI.)

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY  
SIMPLE TENSES.

Infinitive. (Present) Avoir, to have. (Past) Avoir eu, to have had.	Participles. (Présent) ayant, having. (Past) eu, had.	Infinitive. (Present) Être, to be. (Past) Avoir été, to have been.	Participles. (Present) étant, being. (Past) été, been.
Indicative. PRESENT. <i>I have, I am having, I do have.</i>  J'ai tu as il a nous avons vous avez ils ont	Subjunctive. PRESENT. <i>That I may have.</i>  que j'aie que tu aies qu'il ait que nous ayons que vous ayez qu'ils aient	Indicative. PRESENT. <i>I am, I am being.</i>  Je suis tu es il est nous sommes vous êtes ils sont	Subjunctive. PRESENT. <i>That I may be.</i>  que je sois que tu sois qu'il soit que nous soyons que vous soyiez qu'ils soient
IMPERFECT. <i>I had, I was having, I used to have, I did have.</i>  J'avais tu avais il avait nous avions vous aviez ils avaient		IMPERFECT. <i>I was, I was being, I used to be.</i>  J'étais tu étais il était nous étions vous étiez ils étaient	
PRETERITE. <i>I had, I did have.</i>  J'eus tu eus il eut nous eûmes vous étûtes ils eurent	IMPERFECT. <i>That I might have.</i>  que j'eusse que tu eusses qu'il eût que nous eussions que vous eussiez qu'ils eussent	PRETERITE. <i>I was.</i>  Je fus tu fus il fut nous fûmes vous fûtes ils furent	IMPERFECT. <i>That I might be.</i>  que je fusse que tu fusses qu'il fût que nous fussions que vous fussiez qu'ils fussent
FUTURE. <i>I shall or will have.</i>  J'aurai tu auras il aura nous aurons vous aurez ils auront	Conditional PRESENT. <i>I should or would have.</i>  J'aurais tu aurais il aurait nous aurions vous auriez ils auraient	Future. <i>I shall or will be.</i>  Je serai tu seras il sera nous serons vous sarez ils seront	Conditional. PRESENT. <i>I should or would be.</i>  Je serais tu serais il serait nous serions vous seriez ils seraient
Aie have (thou) qu'il ait let him have ayons let us have ayez have (ye) qu'ils aient let them have		Imperative.	Sois be (thou) qu'il soit let him be soyons let us be soyez be (ye) qu'ils soient let them be

VERBS "AVOIR" AND "ÊTRE."

COMPOUND TENSES.

Indicative.

PAST INDEFINITE.

*I have had, I have been.*

J'ai		eu
tu as		
il a		
nous avons		
vous avez		
ils ont		

Subjunctive.

PERFECT.

*That I may have had,  
That I may have been.*

que j'aie		eu
que tu aies		
qu'il ait		
que nous ayons		
que vous ayez		
qu'ils aient		

PLUPERFECT.

*I had had, I had been.*

J'avais		eu
tu avais		
il avait		
nous avions		
vous aviez		
ils avaient		

PAST ANTERIOR.

*I had had, I had been.*

J'eus		eu
tu eus		
il eut		
nous eûmes		
vous eûtes		
ils eurent		

PLUPERFECT.

*That I might have had,  
That I might have been.*

que j'eusse		eu
que tu eusses		
qu'il eût		
que nous eussions		
que vous eussiez		
qu'ils eussent		

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have had,*

*I shall or will have been.*

J'aurai		eu
tu auras		
il aura		
nous aurons		
vous aurez		
ils auront		

CONDITIONAL PAST.

*I should or would have had,*

*I should or would have been.*

J'aurais		eu
tu aurais		
il aurait		
nous aurions		
vous auriez		
ils auraient		

A useful Reader.

THE COMPLETE FRENCH READER. Compiled by A. DUDEVANT.  
With English notes. Demy 8vo., cloth 1s. Of all Booksellers.

London : E. MARLBOROUGH & Co.

## SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF THE FOUR

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Infinitive. (Present) Aimer, to love. (Past) Avoir aimé, to have loved.	Participles. (Present) aimant, loving. (Past) aimé, loved.	Infinitive. (Present) Finir, to finish. (Past) avoir fini, to have finished.	Participles. (Present) finissant, finishing. (Past) fini, finished.
Indicative. PRESENT. <i>I love, I am loving, I do love.</i> J'aime tu aimes il aime nous aimons vous aimez ils aiment	Subjunctive. PRESENT. <i>That I may love.</i> Que j'aime que tu aimes qu'il aime que nous aimions que vous aimiez qu'ils aiment	Indicative. PRESENT. <i>I finish, I am finishing, I do finish.</i> Je finis tu finis il finit nous finissons vous finissez ils finissent	Subjunctive. PRESENT. <i>That I may finish.</i> Que je finisse que tu finisses qu'il finisse que nous finissions que vous finissiez qu'ils finissent
IMPERFECT. <i>I loved, I was loving. I used to love, I did love.</i> J'aimais tu aimais il aimait nous aimions vous aimiez ils aimaient		IMPERFECT. <i>I finished, I was finishing, I used to finish, I did finish.</i> Je finissais tu finissais il finissait nous finissions vous finissiez ils finissaient	
PRETERITE. <i>I loved, I did love.</i> J'aimai tu aimas il aima nous aimâmes vous aimâtes ils aimèrent	IMPERFECT. <i>That I might love.</i> Que j'aimasse que tu aimasses qu'il aimât qu'enous aimassions que vous aimassiez qu'ils aimassent	PRETERITE. <i>I finished, I did finish.</i> Je finis [finish]. tu finis il finit nous finîmes vous finîtes ils finirent	IMPERFECT. <i>That I might finish.</i> Que je finisse que tu finisses qu'il finît que nous finissions que vous finissiez qu'ils finissent
FUTURE. <i>I shall or will love.</i> J'aimerai tu aimeras il aimera nous aimerons vous aimerez ils aimeront	Conditional. PRESENT. <i>I should or would love.</i> J'aimerais tu aimerais il aimeraït nous aimerions vous aimeriez ils aimeraient	FUTURE. <i>I shall or will finish.</i> Je finirai tu finiras il finira nous finirons vous finirez ils finiront	Conditional. PRESENT. <i>I should or would finish.</i> Je finirais tu finirais il finirait nous finirions vous finiriez ils finiraient
aime love (thou) qu'il aime let him love aimons let us love aimez love (ye) qu'ils aiment let them love		Imperative. finis finish (thou) qu'il finisse let him finish finissons let us finish finissez finish (ye) qu'ils finissent let them finish	

## CONJUGATIONS.—SIMPLE TENSES.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

<b>Infinitive.</b> (Present) Recevoir, to receive. (Past) Avoir reçu, to have received.	<b>Participles.</b> (Present) recevant, receiving. (Past) reçu, received.	<b>Infinitive.</b> (Present) Vendre, to sell. (Past) Avoir vendu, to have sold.	<b>Participles.</b> (Present) vendant, selling. (Past) vendu, sold.
<b>Indicative.</b> <b>PRESENT.</b> <i>I receive, I am receiving, I do receive</i>	<b>Subjunctive.</b> <b>PRESENT.</b> <i>That I may receive.</i>	<b>Indicative.</b> <b>PRESENT.</b> <i>I sell, I am selling, I do sell.</i>	<b>Subjunctive.</b> <b>PRESENT.</b> <i>That I may sell.</i>
Je reçois tu reçois il reçoit nous recevons vous recevez ils reçoivent	Que je reçoive que tu reçois qu'il reçoive que nous recevions que vous receviez qu'ils reçoivent	Je vends tu vends il vend nous vendons vous vendez ils vendent	Que je vende que tu vendes qu'il vende que nous vendions que vous vendiez qu'ils vendent
<b>IMPERFECT.</b> <i>I received, I was receiving, I used to receive, I did receive.</i>		<b>IMPERFECT.</b> <i>I sold, I was selling, I used to sell, I did sell.</i>	
Je recevais tu recevais il recevait nous recevions vous receviez ils recevaient		Je vendais tu vendais il vendait nous vendions vous vendiez ils vendaient	
<b>PRETERITE.</b> <i>I received, I did receive.</i>	<b>IMPERFECT.</b> <i>That I might receive.</i>	<b>PRETERITE.</b> <i>I sold, I did sell.</i>	<b>IMPERFECT.</b> <i>That I might sell.</i>
Je reçus [receive.] tu reçus il reçut nous reçumes vous reçûtes ils reçurent	Que je reçusse que tu reçusses qu'il reçût que nous reçussions que vous reçussiez qu'ils reçussent	Je vendis tu vendis il vendit nous vendîmes vous vendîtes ils vendirent	Que je vendisse que tu vendisses qu'il vendît [sions] que nous vendîs- que vous vendissiez qu'ils vendissent
<b>FUTURE.</b> <i>I shall or will receive.</i>	<b>Conditional.</b> <b>PRESENT.</b> <i>I should or would receive.</i>	<b>FUTURE.</b> <i>I shall or will sell.</i>	<b>Conditional.</b> <b>PRESENT.</b> <i>I should or would sell.</i>
Je recevrai tu recevras il recevra nous recevrons vous recevrez ils recevront	Je recevrais tu recevrais il recevrait nous recevrons vous recevriez ils recevraient	Je vendrai tu vendras il vendra nous vendrons vous vendrez ils vendront	Je vendrais tu vendrais il vendrait nous vendrions vous vendriez ils vendraient

### Imperative.

Reçois receive (thou)  
qu'il reçoive let him receive  
recevons let us receive  
recevez receive (ye)  
qu'ils reçoivent let them receive

Vends sell (thou)  
qu'il vende let him sell  
vendons let us sell  
vendez sell (ye)  
qu'ils vendent let them sell

SYNOPTICAL TABLE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

COMPOUND TENSES.

**Indicative.**

**PAST INDEFINITE.**

*I have loved, finished, received, sold.*

J'ai		aimé
tu as		fini
il a		reçu
nous avons		vendu
vous avez		
ils ont		

**Subjunctive.**

**PERFECT.**

*That I may have loved, finished,  
received, sold.*

Que j'aie		aimé
que tu aies		fini
qu'il ait		reçu
que nous ayons		vendu
que vous ayez		
qu'ils aient		

**PLUPERFECT.**

*I had loved, finished, received, sold.*

J'avais		aimé
tu avais		fini
il avait		reçu
nous avions		vendu
vous aviez		
ils avaient		

**PAST ANTERIOR.**

*I had loved, finished, received, sold.*

J'eus		aimé
tu eus		fini
il eut		reçu
nous eûmes		vendu
vous eûtes		
ils eurent		

**PLUPERFECT.**

*That I might have loved, finished,  
received, sold.*

Que j'eusse		aimé
que tu eusses		fini
qu'il eût		reçu
que nous eussions		vendu
que vous eussiez		
qu'ils eussent		

**FUTURE ANTERIOR.**

*I shall or will have loved, finished,  
received, sold.*

J'aurai		aimé
tu auras		fini
il aura		reçu
nous aurons		vendu
vous aurez		
ils auront		

**CONDITIONAL PAST.**

*I should or would have loved,  
finished, received, sold.*

J'aurais		aimé
tu aurais		fini
il aurait		reçu
nous aurions		vendu
vous auriez		
ils auraient		

### The PAST PARTICIPLE forms:

All the compound tenses, with the help of one of the auxiliary verbs **avoir** and **être**.<sup>1</sup>

J'ai parlé; j'avais vendu; je me suis amusé.

### The PRESENT INDICATIVE forms:

The second person singular and the first and second persons plural of the **Imperative** by suppressing the pronouns *je, nous, vous*.

The third persons are borrowed from the Present Subjunctive.

Note IV. In verbs of the first conjugation the *s* of the second person singular of the Imperative is dropped, except before *y* and *en*: *parle*, speak, but *parles-en*, speak of it; *reste*, stay, but *restes-y*, stay there.

### The PRETERITE forms:

The **Imperfect Subjunctive** by adding *se, ses, t, sions, siez, sent*, to the second person singular.

*Tu finis, que je finisse; tu reçus, que je reçusse.*

Note V. In the third person singular of the Imperfect Subjunctive the *s* is changed into *t*, and the vowel preceding the *t* always has a **circumflex accent**.

*Qu'il aimât, qu'il finît, etc.*

Before conjugating a verb, it is therefore necessary to ascertain to which conjugation it belongs, and then to cut off the ending (*er, ir, oir, or re*) in order to obtain the stem. This being done, the terminations peculiar to each tense will be added to the stem.

---

<sup>1</sup> Passive and reflexive verbs and certain intransitive verbs are conjugated with *être*.

### Negative Conjugation.

§ 114. In order to conjugate a verb *negatively*, we place the negative **ne** before the verb and any pronouns governed by the verb, and **pas** after the verb, for the simple tenses.

- Ex. (a) *Je n'aime pas ce vin*, I do not like that wine.  
 (b) *Il ne le finira pas*, he will not finish it.

In compound tenses, **pas** comes between the auxiliary and the participle, as :

- (c) *Je n'ai pas reçu la lettre*, I have not received the letter.  
 (d) *Ils ne l'auraient pas vendu*, they would not have sold it.

§ 115. In the Infinitive Present both parts of the negative precede the verb, as :

- (a) *Ne pas parler*, not to speak.  
 (b) *J'aime mieux ne pas manger*, I prefer (*lit.*, I like better) not to eat.

§ 116. The following negative expressions are also used in conjunction with verbs :

<i>ne...point</i> , not at all	<i>ne...que</i> , only
<i>ne...plus</i> , no longer, no	<i>ne...guère</i> , hardly, scarcely
more, not again	<i>ne...rien</i> , nothing.
<i>ne...jamais</i> , never	

- Ex. (a) *Je ne chante jamais*, I never sing.  
 (b) *Je ne le toucherai plus*, I shall not touch it again.

N.B.—In compound tenses, the *que* of *ne...que* comes **after** the participle, as :

*Je n'ai attendu que cinq minutes*, I waited only five minutes.

### Interrogative Conjugation.

§ 117. To conjugate a verb in the *interrogative* form, the pronoun is put **after** the verb in simple tenses, as :

- Aimez-vous?* Do you love?  
*Entendiez-vous?* Did you hear?

In compound tenses, the pronoun is placed between the auxiliary and the past participle, as:

*Avez-vous fini?* Have you finished?

*L'avez-vous aperçu?* Had you seen (*lit.*, perceived) him?

NOTE 1. Observe that, in conjugating a verb interrogatively, a **hyphen** must be inserted between the verb and the pronoun.

NOTE 2. In the *first* conjugation, the **e** of the first person singular of the Indicative Present takes **an acute accent**, as:

*Parlé-je?* Do I speak?

This form is hardly ever used, **est-ce que** and the affirmative being used instead (see § 120).

NOTE 3. The letter **t** is placed between a *third person singular* ending in a **vowel** and the pronoun, as:

*A-t-il?* Has he? *Aime-t-elle?* Does she love?  
*Parlera-t-il?* Will he speak?

§ 118. If the subject is a noun, it is placed **before** the verb, as in the affirmative form, and a corresponding pronoun is placed **after** the verb.

Ex. *Ma sœur est-elle ici?* Is my sister here?

§ 119. When an interrogative sentence contains the following words—**combien**, how much, **comment**, how, **quand**, when, **que**, what, **où**, where—the noun subject may be placed after the verb or the construction given in the preceding paragraph be used.

Ex. (a) *Quand arrivera votre frère?*

*Quand votre frère arrivera-t-il?*

When will your brother arrive?

(b) *Combien gagne cet ouvrier?*

*Combien cet ouvrier gagne-t-il?*

How much does this workman earn?

If, however, the verb has an object or other words depending on it, the second construction is generally used, as

(c) *Quand votre frère arrivera-t-il en Angleterre?*

When will your brother arrive in England?

§ 120. **Est-ce que?** (*is it that?*) is also used in questions; in that case the affirmative construction must be employed, as : *Est-ce que vous avez fini?* Have you finished ?

§ 121. *Est-ce que* is always used, for the sake of euphony, with verbs of the **fourth** conjugation, and usually so with verbs of the **first** conjugation, in the first person singular of the Present Indicative, as :

*Est-ce que je vends?* Do I sell ?

*Est-ce que je parle?* Do I speak ?

It is also generally used with verbs that have but one syllable in the first person singular of the Present Indicative, as :

*Est-ce que je pars demain?* Do I start to-morrow ?

*Est-ce que je le crains?* Do I fear him ?

The following are allowed :

<i>ai-je?</i> have I ?	<i>puis-je?</i> can I ?
<i>suis-je?</i> am I ?	<i>vois-je?</i> do I see ?
<i>dis-je?</i> do I say ?	<i>vais-je?</i> do I go ?
<i>dois-je?</i> must I ?	

§ 122. **N'est-ce pas?** Such phrases as *Don't you? Will you? Are you not? Have you? etc.*, are usually rendered in French by **n'est-ce pas?** as :

*Vous êtes fatigué, n'est-ce pas?* You are tired, are you not ?

*Vous l'attendrez, n'est-ce pas?* You will wait for him, will you not ? (or won't you ?)

### Interrogative-Negative Conjugation.

§ 123. To conjugate a verb in this form, first write the interrogative of it, and then place **ne** before the verb and **pas** (or *point*, *plus*, etc.) after the pronoun subject, as :

*N'avons-nous pas?* Have we not ?

*N'avait-il pas fini?* Had he not finished ?

*Ne lui avaient-ils pas parlé?* Had they not spoken to him ?

*Le pêcheur n'attrape-t-il pas de poisson?* Does not the fisherman catch fish ?

*Votre cousin ne jouait-il pas du violon?*<sup>1</sup> Was not your cousin playing the violin?

*Vos amis n'auraient-ils pas joué au football?*<sup>1</sup> Would not your friends have played football?

## EXERCISE XXIV.

[This exercise is intended as a kind of drill on verbs.]

(a) Translate into English :

1. Ne dépense-t-il pas (*to spend*) ? 2. Il n'hésita pas (*to hesitate*).
3. Invitaient-ils (*to invite*) ? 4. Les enfants joueront-ils (*to play*) ?
5. Le marchand (*tradesman*) ne vendait-il pas (*to sell*) ? 6. L'avons-nous perdu (*to lose*) ? 7. N'apportez pas (*to bring*). 8. Vous le prépariez (*to prepare*). 9. Pêchez-vous (*to fish*) ? 10. Le voisin ne resterait-il pas (*to stay*) ? 11. Est-ce que je pense (*to think*) ? 12. Ne travaillera-t-il pas (*to work*) ? 13. Avertîmes-nous (*to warn*) ? 14. Est-ce que je n'avertissais pas ? 15. Nous choisissons (*to choose*). 16. N'obéiront-ils pas (*to obey*) ? 17. Établissez-vous (*to establish*) ? 18. Ils ne reçoivent pas (*to receive*). 19. Apercevraient-ils (*to perceive*) ? 20. Il n'attend pas (*to wait for*). 21. Ce commerçant (*merchant*) n'a-t-il pas perdu (*to lose*) ? 22. N'aurais-je pas répondu (*to answer*) ? 23. Vous ne descendiez pas (*to go, or come, down*). 24. La domestique ne descend-elle pas ? 25. Est-ce que je descends ?

(b) Translate into French :

1. Do we possess (*posséder*) ? 2. Were you presiding (*présider*) ?
3. It will not contribute (*contribuer*). 4. Had your partner not decided (*décider*) ? 5. They do not applaud (*applaudir*). 6. Did you not reflect (*réfléchir*—pret.) ? 7. I shall not betray (*trahir*). 8. Would not the solicitors (*avoué*) act (*agir*) ? 9. They conceive the idea (*concevoir*). 10. He has deceived (*décevoir*). 11. We should not have received. 12. Do I pretend (*prétendre*) ? 13. Were you giving back (*rendre*) ? 14. Has it not bitten (*mordre*) ? 15. Would not the firm (*la maison*) lose (*perdre*) ? 16. Was the snow (*la neige*) melting (*fondre*) ? 17. Does it exist (*exister*) ? 18. Will he manage (*gérer*) the firm ? 19. They used to obey (*obéir*). 20. You are not filling (*remplir*) ? 21. Should I supply (*fournir*) ? 22. Should we have guaranteed (*garantir*) ? 23. Will the doctor cure (*guérir*) ? 24. Would you receive ? 25. Let us correspond (*correspondre*).

<sup>1</sup> Observe that "to play" (an instrument) = *jouer de*, whilst "to play" (a game) = *jouer à*.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### The Passive Verb. (Le verbe passif.)

§ 124. There is only one way of conjugating a passive verb; it consists in adding the **past participle** of the verb we wish to conjugate to the verb *être* in all its moods, tenses and persons, as:

*Je suis loué*, I am praised.

§ 125. The past participle of passive verbs **always** agrees with the **subject** of the verb in **gender** and **number**, as:

(a) *Elle sera louée*, she will be praised.

(b) *Nous serions loués*, we should be praised.

N.B.—When the pronoun *vous* refers to a single person, the past participle remains singular, as:

*Monsieur, vous êtes loué*. Sir, you are praised.

*Madame, vous avez été louée*. Madam, you have been praised.

### § 126. Conjugation of a Passive Verb.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

##### (1) Present.

*être aimé(s)*,  
aimée(s). } *to be loved.*

##### (2) Past.

*avoir été aimé(s)*,  
aimée(s). } *to have  
been loved.*

##### (3) Present Participle.

*étant aimé(s)*,  
aimée(s). } *being loved.*

##### (4) Past Participle.

*ayant été aimé(s)*,  
aimée(s). } *having  
been loved.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### (1) Present.

*je suis* } *aimé or aimée*,      *nous sommes*      } *aimés*  
*tu es*      } *I am loved*,      *vous êtes*      } *or*  
*il or elle est* } *I am being loved*.      *ils or elles sont*      } *aimées.*

##### (2) Imperfect.

*j'étais* } *aimé or aimée*,      *nous étions*      } *aimés*  
*tu étais* } *I was being loved*,      *vous étiez*      } *or*  
*il or elle* } *I was loved*,      *ils or elles étaient*      } *aimées.*  
*était*      } *I used to be loved.*

##### (3) Preterite.

*je fus aimé or aimée, &c.,*      *nous fûmes aimés or  
I was loved.*      *aimées. &c.*

#### (4) Past Indefinite.

j'ai été aimé or aimée, &c., *I have been loved.*

(5) *Pluperfect.*

j'avais été aimé or aimée, &c., *I had been loved.*

(6) *Past Anterior.*

j'eus été aimé or aimée, &c., *I had been loved.*

### (7) Future.

*je serai aimé or aimée, &c., I shall be loved.*

(8) Future Anterior.

j'aurai été aimé or aimée, &c., *I shall have been loved.*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

### (1) Present.

je serais aimé or aimée, &c., *I should be loved.*

(2) *Past.*

j'aurais été aimé or aimée, &c., *I should have been loved.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

sois      } aimé or aimée, *be (thou) loved, &c.*  
qu'il soit }

soyons      }  
soyez      } aimés or aimées, *let us be loved*, &c.  
qu'ils soient }

## Subjunctive Mood.<sup>1</sup>

### (1) Present.

que je sois aimé or aimée, &c., que nous soyons aimés or aimées, &c.  
*that I may be loved.*

(2) *Imperfect.*

que je fusse aimé or aimée, &c., *that I might be loved.*

(3) *Perfect.*

que j'aie été aimé or aimée, &c., *that I may have been loved.*

(4) *Pluperfect.*

que j'eusse été aimé or  
aimée, &c. } that I might have been loved.

<sup>1</sup> Do not study this mood until the Subjunctive of the verb *être* has been learned.

## § 127. Negative and Interrogative forms.

### NEGATIVE.

*Je ne suis pas aimé*, I am not loved.  
*Je n'ai pas été aimé*, I have not been loved.  
*Je ne serai pas aimé*, I shall not be loved.  
*Je n'aurais pas été aimé*, I should not have been  
 loved.

### INTERROGATIVE.

*Suis-je aimé?* Am I loved?  
*Avais-je été aimé?* Had I been loved?  
*Serons-nous aimés?* Shall we be loved?  
*Auraient-elles été aimées?* Would they (f.) have  
 been loved?

### INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE.

*Ne suis-je pas aimé?* Am I not loved?  
*N'avait-il pas été aimé?* Had he not been loved?  
*Ne seriez-vous pas aimés?* Would you not be loved?  
*N'aura-t-il pas été aimé?* Will he not have been  
 loved?

[If the student will master the forms of the examples given he will  
 find them a sufficient guide.]

**§ 128.** The following intransitive verbs and their compounds are also conjugated with **être**, and the past participle **always agrees** with the subject:

<i>aller</i> , to go	<i>partir</i> , to start
<i>arriver</i> , to arrive	<i>rester</i> , to stay, remain
<i>décéder</i> , to die	<i>retourner</i> , to go back
<i>entrer</i> , to enter	<i>sortir</i> , to go out
<i>mourir</i> , to die	<i>tomber</i> , to fall
<i>naitre</i> , to be born	<i>venir</i> , to come.

Ex. *Elle est arrivée ce matin*, she (has) arrived this morning.

*Ils seraient tombés dans la rivière*, they would have fallen into the river.

## EXERCISE XXV.

[This exercise illustrates grammar rules already studied, but more especially the four conjugations and the passive voice.]

1. Shall we speak of our journey when we go back<sup>1</sup> (Future) ?
2. Although we were (Imperf. Subjunc.)<sup>2</sup> neighbours, I never<sup>3</sup> visited him.
3. The scheme will be explained to you and then (*alors*) you will act.
4. We are lost if the tide is rising (*monter*).
5. Listen [to] me and do not speak so much.
6. The noise was heard<sup>4</sup> (*on entendit*) all (the) night.
7. Do not play any more;<sup>5</sup> you will be too tired.
8. This machine was (*say* has been) invented by an Englishman.
9. During yesterday's thunderstorm (the thunderstorm of yesterday) several persons were killed by (the) lightning.
10. They will be surprised if you catch much fish.
11. Lend me one of your lines, mine is broken.
12. Here is a line ; are the hooks rusty ?
13. If we do not play<sup>5</sup> lawn-tennis this afternoon, they will be very disappointed.
14. She was accused wrongly ; she had left the house when the robbery was effected (*fut commis*).
15. She has not gone out because she has a cold (to have a cold = *être enrhumé*).
16. The fog is not so thick now ; we shall start.
17. As soon as I get (*arriver*) to the office, I answer (to) all the letters.
18. He had gone to London, so that (*de sorte que*) we were compelled to (*de*) wait.
19. Without them, we should have fallen into the river.
20. The more<sup>6</sup> I insisted, the more<sup>6</sup> he refused.
21. About a hundred miners were buried alive (*vivants*) in that mine.
22. The house was sold yesterday ; the furniture (*les meubles*) is theirs.
23. He has gone out ; he will be back (*être de retour*) at half-past four.
24. Will you receive the amount next week ?<sup>7</sup>
25. I do not expect it for (before) a fortnight.\*

<sup>1</sup> After "when" = *quand* or *lorsque*, the Future is used to translate the English Present when futurity is implied ; (see also § 161).

<sup>2</sup> See § 140 on the Subjunctive.

<sup>3</sup> See § 116.

<sup>4</sup> The passive voice is much less used in French than in English. A passive is often rendered in French by the active verb, with **on** (*one*, *they*, *we*, *you*, *people*) for subject.

\* See footnote, p. 60.   \* See § 33. N.B.   \* See § 60.   \* See § 59.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### Reflexive Verbs. (Verbes réfléchis.)

§ 129. The reflexive pronouns used in the conjugation of reflexive verbs are :

<i>me</i> , myself	<i>nous</i> , ourselves
<i>te</i> , thyself	<i>vous</i> , yourselves
<i>se</i> , himself, herself, oneself	<i>se</i> , themselves.

The reflexive pronoun must always be of the same number and person as the pronoun or (noun) subject.

§ 130. Reflexive verbs have no conjugation of their own ; they follow the one indicated by their infinitive. In their **compound tenses** they are conjugated with the auxiliary *être*.

§ 131. The *past participle* of reflexive verbs agrees in gender and number with the **direct object** if it **precedes** the verb, as :

*Elles se sont flattées*, they have flattered themselves.

The participle *flattées* agrees with the pronoun *se*, which precedes the verb.

In the following example—

*Elles se sont lavé les<sup>1</sup> mains*, they have washed their hands (*lit.*, they have washed the hands to themselves)

—the reflexive pronoun *se* is dative (*indirect object*) ; the direct object is **les mains**, and as it does not precede the verb the past participle remains unchanged.

### § 132. Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

(1) *Present.* (2) *Past.*

s'amuser, to enjoy oneself. s'être amusé } to have enjoyed  
or amusée } oneself.

*Present Participle.*

s'amusant, enjoying one-self. s'étant amusé } having enjoyed  
or amusée } oneself.

<sup>1</sup> For this construction see § 40, N.B.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

(1) *Present.*

je m'amuse, <sup>1</sup>	I enjoy (or am	nous nous amusons
tu t'amuses	enjoying, or do	vous vous amusez
il s'amuse	enjoy) myself.	ils s'amusent.

(2) *Imperfect.*

je m'amusais,	I enjoyed (or was enjoying, or used to enjoy,
&c.	or did enjoy myself).

(3) *Preterite.*

je m'amusai, &c., I enjoyed myself.

(4) *Past Indefinite.*

je me suis	amusé or amusée,	nous nous sommes	amusés
tu t'es	I have enjoyed	vous vous êtes	or
il (elle) s'est	myself.	ils (elles) se sont	amusées

(5) *Pluperfect.*

je m'étais amusé or amusée, &c., I had enjoyed myself.

(6) *Past Anterior.*

je me fus amusé or amusée, &c., I had enjoyed myself.

(7) *Future.*

je m'amuserai, &c., I shall or will enjoy myself.

(8) *Future Anterior.*

je me serai amusé or amusée, &c., I shall have enjoyed myself.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

(1) *Present.*

je m'amuserais, &c., I should or would enjoy myself.

(2) *Past.*

je me serais amusé	I should have enjoyed myself.
or amusée, &c.	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

amuse-toi, *enjoy yourself* (lit., *thyself*)

qu'il s'amuse, *let him enjoy himself*

amusons-nous, *let us enjoy ourselves*

amusez-vous, *enjoy yourself or yourselves*

qu'ils s'amusent, *let them enjoy themselves.*

Note that in the Imperative the reflexive pronouns are placed **after** the verb. (Cf. § 63.)

<sup>1</sup> Observe that *me*, *te*, *se*, become *m'*, *t'*, *s'*, before a vowel or *h* mute (cf. § 61, footnote).

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(1) Present.

que je m'amuse, &c., *that I may enjoy myself.*

(2) Imperfect.

que je m'amusasse, &c., *that I might enjoy myself.*

(3) Perfect.

que je me *sois amusé* } *that I may have enjoyed myself.*  
or amusée, &c.

(4) Pluperfect.

que je me *fusse amusé* } *that I might have enjoyed myself.*  
or amusée, &c.

## § 133. Negative and Interrogative forms.

## PRESENT.

*Je ne m'amuse pas.. Est-ce que je m'amuse ?<sup>1</sup>*  
*Est-ce que je ne m'amuse pas ?*

## IMPERFECT.

*Je ne m'amusais pas. M'amusais-je ?*

## PAST INDEFINITE.

*Je ne me suis pas amusé. Me suis-je amusé ?*  
*Ne me suis-je pas amusé ?*

## IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE.

*Ne t'amuse pas. Ne nous amusons pas.*  
*Qu'il ne s'amuse pas. Ne vous amusez pas.*  
*Qu'ils ne s'amusent pas.*

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

*Je ne me serais pas amusé. Me serais-je amusé ?*  
*Ne me serais-je pas amusé ?*§ 134. We conjugate in the same way **se réjouir**, to rejoice; **s'apercevoir**, to notice, etc.

## PRESENT.

*Je me réjouis, je m'aperçois.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Je me réjouissais, je m'apercevais.*<sup>1</sup> See § 121 for the use of *est-ce que*.

## PAST INDEFINITE.

*Je me suis* {réjoui (or réjouie),  
aperçu (or aperçue).

## PAST CONDITIONAL.

*Je me serais* {réjoui (or réjouie),  
aperçu (or aperçue).

§ 135. Reflexive verbs are also used to express reciprocity of action between two or more subjects, as :

*Ils se regardent*, they look at each other.

*Ces enfants se taquinent*, these children are teasing one another.

§ 136. With certain reflexive verbs, the meaning may not be clear; to avoid ambiguity, **l'un l'autre** in its different forms (see § 97) is used; for instance :

*Ils se flattent* may mean *they flatter themselves* or *they flatter each other*; but *Ils se flattent l'un l'autre* can only mean *they flatter each other*.

*Ils se sont blessés* = *they have wounded themselves* or *they have wounded one another*.

*Ils se sont blessés les uns les autres* = *they have wounded one another*.

## The Past Participle with "Avoir."

§ 137. The past participle conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* agrees like the past participle of reflexive verbs, that is to say, in gender and number with **the direct object**, if the direct object **precedes** the verb.

Ex. (a) *J'ai mangé une pomme*, I have eaten an apple.

(b) *La pomme que j'ai mangée était mauvaise*, the apple which I have eaten was bad.

In example (a) the past participle remains unchanged because the direct object *une pomme* **does not precede** the verb. On the other hand, in example (b) the past participle agrees with the direct object *que* (relative pronoun, feminine singular, standing for *pomme*) because that object **precedes** the verb.

## EXERCISE XXVI.

1. You will enjoy yourselves at the ball. 2. We rejoiced at (*de*) his success. 3. They are laughing at (*de*) our clumsiness. 4. We have met (each other) several times at the club. 5. Would you get up if you were called?<sup>1</sup> 6. Let us rest a few minutes. 7. Had you noticed that he was blind? 8. He will not notice the alteration. 9. Make haste; we shall miss the train. 10. They bowed [to] each other, but they did not speak. 11. They grow rich because they are very thrifty. 12. Show me the books (which<sup>2</sup>) you have bought.<sup>3</sup> 13. I have not bought<sup>3</sup> these books; my brother-in-law has lent<sup>3</sup> them to me. 14. Do not bathe to-day; the water is too cold. 15. She caught cold (Past Indef.) yesterday. 16. If they had applied to one of the directors, they would have been appointed. 17. Would they have settled in (*à*) London or in (*en\**) America? 18. She never agrees with her sister; they are [<sup>2</sup>] always [<sup>1</sup>] quarrelling. 19. Would you have waited<sup>3</sup> [for] those gentlemen if you had had (the) time? 20. We should warm ourselves if there was a fire (*say* some fire). 21. If you had been in the room, these children would not have teased one another. 22. These young ladies were looking [at] one another when I entered (Pret.) (into) the drawing-room. 23. We took a walk (Past Indef. To take a walk = *se promener*) this morning; the weather was (Imperf.) glorious (*superbe*). 24. Had he not exposed himself to a great danger? 25. As soon as I approached (Pret.—*s'approcher*) the bird flew away (Pret.—*s'en voler*).

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

### On the Use of the Subjunctive Mood.

The cases in which the Subjunctive is used are very numerous and involve some difficult questions of syntax, but a few simple rules for employing that mood may be given at this point.

§ 138. The Subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause depending on a verb expressing *wish* or *command*, *uncertainty*, *permission*, *fear* (see Note 2), and generally speaking any emotion of the mind (*regret*, *pleasure*, *surprise*, etc.).

Ex. (a) *Je désire que vous chantiez* (Pres. Subj.), I wish you to sing.

<sup>1</sup> Use *on* and the active, and see § 103.

<sup>2</sup> See § 82, N.B.      <sup>3</sup> See § 137.      \* See § 7(d).

Note 1. Observe that the accusative construction used in English cannot be employed in French, and that the sentence has to be turned thus : *I wish that you should (or may) sing.*

- (b) *Il regrette que vous soyez malade*, he regrets that you are ill.
- (c) *J'ai peur [or Je crains] qu'il N'ait quitté Paris ce matin*, I fear [or am afraid] (that) he (has) left Paris this morning.

Note 2. Verbs of fearing, if affirmative, require a redundant *ne*<sup>1</sup> with the following verb : if negative or interrogative, *ne* is not used, as : *Je ne crains pas qu'il m'aperçoive*, I am not afraid that he will see me, or of his seeing me.

§ 139. The Subjunctive is used after certain **impersonal** verbs ; the more common are :—

<i>il faut,</i>	<i>it is neces-</i>	<i>il est possible,</i>	<i>it is possible</i>
<i>il est nécessaire</i>		<i>il se peut</i>	
<i>il importe,</i>	<i>it is impor-</i>	<i>il est temps,</i>	<i>it is time</i>
<i>il est important</i>		<i>il est juste,</i>	
	<i>tant</i>	<i>il vaut mieux,</i>	<i>it is better</i>
		<i>il semble,</i>	<i>it seems.</i>

Also after the expression *c'est dommage*, it is a pity.

Ex. (a) *Il faut que nous finissions cette lettre*, we must finish that letter (lit., it is necessary that we should finish).

(b) *Il est temps que nous rentrions*, it is time (that) we should go home [for us to go home].

§ 140. Certain **conjunctions** require the Subjunctive ; among the commonest are :—

<i>afin que,</i>	<i>in order that,</i>	<i>pourvu que,</i>	<i>provided that</i>
<i>pour que</i>		<i>sans que,</i>	<i>without</i>
<i>avant que,</i>	<i>before</i>	<i>supposé que,</i>	<i>supposing that</i>
<i>bien que,</i>		<i>de crainte que...ne<sup>2</sup>,</i>	
<i>quoique</i>	<i>although</i>	<i>de peur que...ne<sup>2</sup>,</i>	<i>for fear</i>
<i>jusqu'à ce que,</i>		<i>à moins que...ne<sup>2</sup>,</i>	
			<i>unless.</i>

Ex. (a) *Je travaille afin que mon père soit content de moi*, I work so that my father may be pleased with me.

(b) *Je restai jusqu'à ce qu'il eût fini*, I stayed until he had finished.

<sup>1</sup> This is not a negative *ne*.

<sup>2</sup> Redundant *ne* is required with these (cf. § 138, Note 2).

§ 141. The Subjunctive is used in a relative clause (i.e. one introduced by *qui*, *que*, *dont*, etc.) depending on a superlative, or on the words **le premier**, the first, **le dernier**, the last, **le seul** or **l'unique**, the only (one).

Ex. *C'est le meilleur vin que j'aie jamais goûté*, it is the best wine (that) I have ever tasted.

§ 142. Finally, the Subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause depending on a negative or interrogative verb.

Ex. *Je ne pense pas qu'il soit ici*, I don't think he is here.

*Pensiez-vous qu'il répondit?* Did you think he would answer ?

Learn the tenses of the Subjunctive of *recevoir* and *vendre* (p. 63).

### EXERCISE XXVII.

Translate into French :

1. It is time you should leave us.
2. I am sorry you have not met him.
3. Although they (had) perceived us, they did not stop<sup>1</sup> (*s'arrêter*).
4. I do not think (that) you will succeed.
5. I wish you to wait;<sup>2</sup> she will be here in a quarter of an hour.
6. I will post this letter to-night (*Je mettrai cette lettre à la poste ce soir*) in order that he may receive it to-morrow morning (*demain matin*).
7. I am afraid we are wrong.<sup>3</sup>
8. Let us stay under this tree until it has ceased raining (*de pleuvoir*).
9. It is the longest journey we have ever made (*fait*).
10. Do not wait until<sup>4</sup> he is very ill; send for (*envoyez chercher*) the doctor.
11. We are not afraid (*Nous ne craignons pas*) that he will arrive before us.
12. I doubt whether (*que*) you are right.<sup>5</sup>
13. Is it time we should go to bed (to go to bed = *se coucher*)?<sup>6</sup>
14. It is better that you should close the window.
15. We must<sup>6</sup> sell our house because we are leaving this neighbourhood.
16. I do not believe (*Je ne crois pas*) that he has acted thus.
17. I am astonished that you have not let your house.
18. Although the weather is very bad, we shall start for the seaside next week.<sup>7</sup>
19. You are the only one of my nephews who answers (to) my letters.
20. I shall not leave London unless you accompany me.

<sup>1</sup> When a transitive verb is employed intransitively in English, it is generally used reflexively in French, as : *J'arrête le fiacre*, I stop the cab; but *je m'arrête*, I stop.

<sup>2</sup> Observe §138, Note 1.

<sup>3</sup> See §152.  
<sup>4</sup> After *attendre*, "until" is rendered by **que** followed by the Subjunctive.

<sup>5</sup> The French rendering would be the same if the English were : *Is it time for us to go to bed?*

<sup>6</sup> Say : *It is necessary that we should...*

<sup>7</sup> See §60.

## CHAPTER XX.

### Impersonal Verbs. (Verbes impersonnels.)

§ 143. Impersonal verbs are only used in the third person singular, with **il** as subject. They take the inflections of the third person singular of the conjugation to which they belong, and their past participle is **always invariable**.

§ 144. The following are among the most important impersonal verbs:

<i>arriver</i> , to happen	<i>importer</i> , to be important or
<i>dégeler</i> , to thaw (§148)	of importance (§139)
<i>geler</i> , to freeze (§148)	<i>tonner</i> , to thunder
<i>éclairer</i> , to lighten	<i>neiger</i> , to snow (§147)
<i>falloir</i> , to be necessary (§139 and §221)	<i>pleuvoir</i> , to rain (§223)
<i>grêler</i> , to hail	<i>il y a</i> , there is.

Ex. (a) *Il neigera cette après-midi*, it will snow this afternoon.

(b) *Il a tonné cette nuit*, it (has) thundered last night.

(c) *Il y aura beaucoup de monde*, there will be many people (there).

N.B.—*Il y a* is conjugated as follows:

INF. PRES. <i>Y avoir</i>	FUT. <i>Il y aura</i>
„ PAST. <i>Y avoir eu</i>	FUT. PAST. <i>Il y aura eu</i>
IND. PRES. <i>Il y a</i>	COND. PRES. <i>Il y aurait</i>
IMPERF. <i>Il y avait</i>	„ PAST. <i>Il y aurait eu</i>
PRET. <i>Il y eut</i>	SUBJ. PRES. <i>Qu'il y ait</i>
PAST INDEF. <i>Il y a eu</i>	„ IMP. <i>Qu'il y eût</i>
PLUP. <i>Il y avait eu</i>	„ PERF. <i>Qu'il y ait eu</i>
PAST ANT. <i>Il y eut eu</i>	„ PLUP. <i>Qu'il y eût eu</i>
NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE:— <i>Y aura-t-il?</i> <i>N'y aurait-il pas eu?</i> &c.	<i>N'y</i>

§ 145. When speaking of the weather, the verb *to be* may be rendered by **faire** (*to make*) used impersonally, and the word **temps** (weather) is not expressed.

Ex. *Il fait beau*, it is fine, or the weather is fine. But *Le temps est beau*, it is fine, or the weather is fine,

Other impersonal expressions connected with the weather are:

- il fait mauvais (temps)*, it is bad weather.
- il fait chaud*,<sup>1</sup> it is warm.
- il fait froid*,<sup>1</sup> it is cold.
- il fait jour*, it is daylight.
- il fait nuit*, it is dark.
- il fait du brouillard*, it is foggy.
- il fait frais*, it is cool.

§ 146. *Il s'agit de* = it is a question (a matter) of. Note the following examples:

- (1) *De quoi s'agit-il?* What is the matter (in question)?
- (2) *Il s'agissait de vous*, it concerned you (you were the subject of the conversation).
- (3) *Il ne s'agit pas de cela*, that's not the question (the point).
- (4) *Il s'agit de votre vie*, your life is at stake (*lit.*, it is a question of your life).

## CHAPTER XXI.

### Peculiarities in certain Verbs of the First Conjugation.

§ 147. Verbs ending in the Infinitive in **cer** and **ger** take, the former a **cedilla** under the **c**, the latter an **e mute** after the **g**, when the **c** or **g** comes before the vowels **a** or **o**.<sup>2</sup>

- Ex. (1) *Avancer*, to advance; *nous avançons*, we advance; *vous avançâtes*, you advanced.
- (2) *Manger*, to eat; *mangeant*, eating; *nous mangeons*, we are eating. *Neiger*, to snow; *il neigeait*, it was snowing; *quoiqu'il* (§ 140) *neigeât*, although it was snowing; etc.

<sup>1</sup> Note that "I am hot (or cold)" = *j'ai froid* (or *chaud*); see § 152.

<sup>2</sup> This is in order that the **c** and **g** should retain the sounds of **s** and **j** respectively which they have in the Infinitive (cf. Introd. VI.); **c** and **g** have a soft sound before **e**, **i**, **y**, and a hard sound before **a**, **o**, **u**.

§ 148. Verbs whose Infinitive ends in **eler** and **eter** double the **I** or **t** before an **e mute** (i.e. before *e, es, ent*).<sup>1</sup>

Ex. (1) *Appeler*, to call; *j'appelle*, I call; *j'appellerai*, I shall call; *nous appellerions*, we should call, etc.; but *vous appelez*, *ils appelaient*, etc.

(2) *Jeter*, to throw; *ils jettent*, they throw; *ils jetteront*, they will throw; *il faut* (§139) *que je jette*, I must throw; but *nous jetons, jeté*.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—The following verbs in *eler* and *eter* are conjugated according to the next rule:

<i>achetér</i> , to buy	<i>dégeler</i> , to thaw
<i>racheter</i> , to redeem	<i>peler</i> , to peel
<i>celer</i> , to conceal	<i>étiqueter</i> , to label
<i>geler</i> , to freeze	

and a few others rarely used. Ex. *il gèle, j'achèterai*, etc.

§ 149. Verbs with **e mute** in the last syllable of the stem<sup>2</sup> change that *e* into **é** (*e* grave) before an **e mute** (i.e. before *e, es, ent*).

Ex. *Mener*, to lead; *je mène*, I lead; *je mènerai*, I shall lead; *vous mèneriez*, you would lead; etc. But *vous menez, nous menions*, etc.

§ 150. Verbs with **é** (*e* acute) in the last syllable of the stem change **é** into **è** before **e mute**, but **not** in the **Future** and **Conditional Present**.

Ex. *Préférer*, to prefer; *je préfère*, I prefer; *ils préfèrent*, they prefer; but *je préférerai*, I shall prefer; *il préférerait*, he would prefer.

§ 151. Verbs ending in **yer** change **y** into **i** before **e mute** (i.e. before *e, es, ent*).

Ex. *Nettoyer*, to clean; *je nettoie*, I am cleaning; *je nettoierai*, I shall clean; *vous nettoieriez*, you would clean; *il vaut mieux* (§139) *qu'ils nettoient*, it is better they should clean. But *nous nettoyons, il nettoyait*.

<sup>1</sup> There can never be two consecutive mute syllables in a French word, hence the change which takes place. That change is indicated either by doubling the consonant as here, or by an accent as in the next paragraph (149).

\* How is the stem obtained? (§105).

N.B.—Verbs in **ayer** may retain the *y* or change it into *i*, as:

*Payer*, to pay; *je paye* or *je paie*, I pay; *je payerai je paierai*, I shall pay; etc.

The student should now begin the study of irregular verbs and follow the hints given in §§ 195-198. Instead of learning the verbs in the order given, it is advisable to learn a few of each conjugation in turn and thus become immediately acquainted with verbs belonging to each of the four conjugations.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

[This exercise bears on §§143—151.]

Translate into French :

1. I think (that) it is snowing.
2. Will there be many people (§144, Ex. c) at that ball?
3. It has been hailing (*say* it has hailed) and all the fruit-trees (*les arbres fruitiers*) are ruined (*abîmés*).
4. If it is fine to-morrow, we shall go fishing (*nous irons à la pêche*).
5. Do not let us play<sup>1</sup> tennis now; it is too hot.
6. It is freezing (§148, Exceptions); the ice will be thick and we shall skate.
7. Sometimes it happens that he is not at home (*à la maison*), then (*alors*) his son receives the clients.
8. He abridged (Pret.) his speech because it was getting late (*il se faisait tard*).
9. We protect him because he endeavours to (*de*) do his duty.
10. It was beginning to rain when they started (Pret.).
11. Let us replace this word by another.
12. Will not this letter weigh too much?<sup>2</sup>
13. When I write (*j'écris*) abroad (*à l'étranger*) I use (*employer*)<sup>[2]</sup> thinner<sup>[1]</sup> paper.
14. Will you have (*Voulez-vous*) tea or coffee?<sup>3</sup> I prefer coffee, thank you.
15. Will he clean these boots? Yes, if they (*on*) pay him.
16. Do not wipe (*s'essuyer*, 2nd person singular) your (*les<sup>4</sup>*) hands on (*à*) that towel, it is not clean.
17. Why does he not seal this letter; has he not

<sup>1</sup> See footnote p. 69.      <sup>2</sup> §36, N.B.      <sup>3</sup> §6, N.B.

\* Before a substantive denoting a part of the body, the English possessive adjective is often replaced in French by the definite article, as: *levez la main*, raise your hand. For the sake of clearness it is sometimes necessary either to use a reflexive verb (as in the above sentence), or to add a personal pronoun, as: *Je lui ai coupé le doigt*, I have cut his finger (*lit.*, I have cut the finger to him, i.e. belonging to him). Cf. §40, N.B., and §131, *Elles se sont lavé les*

finished it?<sup>1</sup> 18. If it freezes in the night (*cette nuit*) we shall buy skates to-morrow morning (*demain matin*). 19. This little boy spells very well now. 20. I shall buy this racket, it is cheap (*bon marché*); it is cheaper (*meilleur marché*) than yours. 21. We eat fish twice<sup>2</sup> a<sup>3</sup> week for breakfast. 22. When their father retires<sup>4</sup> (*se retirer*) from business (*des affaires*) will they succeed (to) him? 23. He will call you at seven o'clock precisely (*précises*). 24. If he leans against that little table, he will upset it. 25. That was not the question (§146).

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

### Cases in which “Avoir” is used instead of “Être.”

§ 152. The verb **avoir** with a substantive is used in French in a few cases where the English use “to be” (*être*) with an adjective. The following is a list of the more common expressions:

<i>Avoir faim,</i>	to be hungry
“ <i>soif,</i>	“ thirsty
“ <i>chaud,</i> <sup>5</sup>	“ hot
“ <i>froid,</i> <sup>6</sup>	“ cold
“ <i>honte,</i>	“ ashamed
“ <i>raison,</i>	“ right
“ <i>tort,</i>	“ wrong
“ <i>peur,</i>	“ afraid (or frightened)
“ <i>envie,</i>	“ (or feel) inclined
“ <i>sommeil,</i>	“ (or feel) sleepy.

Ex. (a) *Il avait très soif*, he was very thirsty.

(b) *N'avez-vous pas honte de votre conduite?* Are you not ashamed of your conduct?

(c) *Vous auriez eu raison*, you would have been right.

---

<sup>1</sup> §137.    <sup>2</sup> §60.    <sup>3</sup> §10.

<sup>4</sup> See footnote 1, p. 73, and §161.

<sup>5</sup> Not to be confused with *il fait chaud*, it is hot; *il fait froid* it is cold; §145.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### Use of some Tenses of the Indicative.

Irregular verbs will now be introduced in grammatical examples and in exercises; the number in brackets after a verb indicates the paragraph of the grammar where that verb is to be found.

§ 153. **Present.**—We have already seen that the Present has only one form in French, and that *I love*, *I am loving*, and *I do love* are translated by *j'aime*.

§ 154. The Present is used with *il y a* or *depuis* instead of the English Preterite in speaking of actions begun some time ago and still continuing, as :

(a) *Il y a une heure que j'attends*, or } *I have been wait-*  
    *J'attends depuis une heure,*                 } *ing an hour*  
(*lit.*, there is an hour that I am waiting, or I am waiting since an hour).

N.B.—Therefore the sentence, “How long have you been here?” must be translated :

*Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes ici?* or  
*Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?*

(*lit.*, how long is there that you are here, or since when are you here?)

§ 155. The **Imperfect** (*j'aimais* = I loved, I was loving, I used to love) is used :

1. Of an action which was habitual, or repeated in the past, as :

*Il se couchait tous les jours à dix heures*, he went to bed (he used to go to bed) every day at ten o'clock.

2. To describe an action going on at the same time as another actually mentioned, as :

(a) *Je travaillais pendant que vous vous amusiez*, I was working whilst you were enjoying yourself.

(b) *J'étudiais quand il arriva*, I was studying when he arrived.

3. To describe the *state*, *place*, or *disposition* in which persons or things were in time past, as :

(a) *Il était médecin*, he was a doctor.

(b) *La ville était située sur le bord de la mer*, the town was situated on the coast.

N.B.—Whenever the English past tense can be turned into *used to* + Infinitive, or *was* + Present Participle (i.e. used to speak, was speaking), the Imperfect is to be used in French.

§ 156. Whilst the Pluperfect is used in English to indicate that an action or state of things, begun previously, was still continuing,<sup>1</sup> the Imperfect with **il y avait** or **depuis** is to be used in French (cf. §154), as :

*Il y avait une heure que j'attendais*, or

*J'attendais depuis une heure*, I had been waiting<sup>1</sup> for an hour.

§ 157. The **Preterite** (*j'aimai*, I loved) is used to relate a single action or fact fully completed. It is also called the *narrative* or *historical* tense because it is chiefly used in narratives and history.

Ex. *Napoléon mourut* (§210) à *Sainte-Hélène en 1821*, Napoleon died at St. Helena in 1821.

§ 158. In a narrative the principal verbs, that is to say those which carry the narrative on, are put in the *Preterite*, whilst the *Imperfect* is used for those verbs describing the state of things, the details or scene (cf. §155, 3). In the following extract, it will be seen that the verbs which carry the narrative a step forward are in the *Preterite*, whilst those describing details, etc., are in the *Imperfect*:

Le lendemain, un détachement de troupes **porta** dans la ville le nouveau drapeau, qui *était* celui de l'île. Il **fut** aussitôt arboré sur le fort ; la frégate anglaise le **salua**, ainsi que tous les vaisseaux qui *étaient* dans le port. Vers deux heures, Napoléon **descendit** à terre avec toute sa suite ; les troupes de la garnison *étaient* sous les armes et *formaient* la haie...

---

<sup>1</sup> The "Pluperfect continuous."

The next day, a detachment of soldiers brought into the town the new flag, which was that of the island. It was immediately hoisted on the fort; the English frigate fired a salute (*lit.*, saluted it), and so did all the ships which were in the harbour. About two o'clock. Napoleon landed with all his retinue; the troops of the garrison were under arms and lined the way...

§ 159. The **Past Indefinite** (*j'ai aimé*, I have loved, I did love) is used for the English Past tense in conversation and correspondence.

It is also used in reference to events that have occurred recently and when the English verb is accompanied by one of the following: *To-day, yesterday, this* (or *last*) *week, this* (or *last*) *month, this morning, last night*, etc.

Ex. (a) *Je l'ai rencontré hier soir*, I met him last night.

(b) *Je vous ai écrit* (§243) *la semaine dernière et vous n'avez pas répondu à ma lettre*, I wrote to you last week and you did not answer my letter.

But: *Napoléon écrivit au Prince Régent d'Angleterre en 1815*, Napoleon wrote to the Prince Regent of England in 1815.

N.B.—Always turn the English *did* into **has** or **have** in a question, as:

*Avez-vous parlé au chef de gare?* Did you speak to the station-master?

§ 160. The **Past Anterior** (*j'eus aimé*, I had loved) is used chiefly in principal sentences beginning with *à peine*, *scarcely*, and subordinate sentences beginning with *lorsque*, *quand*, *when*, *après que*, *after*, *aussitôt que*, *dès que*, *as soon as*. The ordinary Pluperfect is used in other cases.

Ex. (a) *À peine eut-il reçu la nouvelle qu'il partit* (§211), he had scarcely received the news when he started.

N.B.—When *à peine* comes thus **at the beginning** of a sentence there are **two** points to be observed: 1, the sentence is inverted; 2, *when* is rendered by *que*.

(b) *Il quitta le pays aussitôt qu'il eut vendu sa maison*, he left the country as soon as he had sold his house.

§ 161. The **Future** (*j'aimerai*, I shall or will love) is used instead of the English Present when future time is referred to, and after one of the following conjunctions: *Quand*, *lorsque*, *when*, *aussitôt que*, *dès que*, *as soon as*, *tant que*, *as long as* or *while*, if the action is really future, as:—

- (a) *Venez* (§216) *aussi souvent que vous voudrez* (§229), come as often as you like (*lit.*, will like).
- (b) *Je lui en parlerai aussitôt qu'il arrivera*, I shall speak to him about it as soon as he arrives.

§ 162. The **Future Anterior** (*j'aurai aimé*, I shall or will have loved) is used for the English Past tense in the same way as the French Future is used for the English Present.

Ex. *Nous en parlerons quand nous aurons diné*, we shall speak about it when we have dined.

---

### EXERCISE XXIX.

[On §§152—162. In this exercise and the following, the number in brackets after a verb refers to the paragraph at which the latter is to be found in the tables of irregular verbs, pp. 105-120.]

Translate into French:

1. I saw (§228) your brother this morning.
2. We have been living (*habiter*) here for two years.
3. Had you been waiting long?
4. We were very hungry when we came home (*rentrer*).
5. They will be thirsty when they arrive.
6. When we were in Paris we took a walk (*faire* [§245] *une promenade*) in the (*au*) Bois de Boulogne every day.
7. We went (§199) to the theatre last night.
8. As soon as he had begun to (*à*) play, everybody was silent (§260).
9. You are right; it is raining (§223).
10. I shall call you as soon as I am ready.
11. The postman came (§216) just as (*au moment où*) I was coming home.
12. She was very old; she came up (*monter*) the stairs very slowly.
13. When he saw (*apercevoir*) me, he stopped<sup>1</sup> short (*court*) and took off (§256) his hat.
14. It was two o'clock in (*de*) the afternoon, and we had not had lunch (to have lunch = *déjeuner*).
15. The author of that book died (§210) in 1750.
16. He married last year; his wife is a cousin of mine.
17. Our luggage was examined at the frontier; I had nothing to (*à*) declare.
18. The spot was very lonely; were you not frightened?
19. The child was playing in the garden when his

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 1, p. 80.

mother called him. 20. He took his handkerchief out (to take out = *tirer*) of his pocket and wiped his<sup>1</sup> forehead. 21. I am sure that he is ashamed of his conduct. 22. When I heard these words, I felt inclined to (*de*) laugh. 23. I will answer (to) your letter as soon as I hear<sup>2</sup> from the agent. 24. Did you not meet him the other day? What did he tell (§242) you? 25. Scarcely had you left the office when I received the telegram.

---

## CHAPTER XXIV.

### The Infinitive. (L'infinitif).

The rules governing the use of the Infinitive are many; the simpler cases only are treated here.

#### Infinitive without a Preposition.

§ 163. The Infinitive without a preposition is used:

1. After verbs of **motion**.

Ex. *Je vais* (§199) *le faire* (§245), I am going to do it.

2. After verbs of *preferring, wishing, hearing, seeing,* and the auxiliary verbs of mood—*devoir, vouloir, pouvoir, savoir* (§§169—173).

Ex. *J'aime mieux rester*, I prefer to stay.

*Je désire vous voir* (§228), I wish to see you.

§ 164. The following is a list of the principal verbs which are followed by the Infinitive without a preposition:

*affirmer*, to assert

*devoir*, to have to, must

*aimer mieux*, to prefer

*dire*, to say

*aller*, to go

*entendre*, to hear

*assurer*, to assure

*envoyer*, to send

*avoir beau*, to do in vain

*espérer*, to hope

*courir*, to run

*faire*, to make, cause, order

*croire*, to think, believe

*falloir*, to be necessary

*déclarer*, to declare

*laisser*, to let, allow

*désirer*, to wish

*oser*, to dare

<sup>1</sup> Cf. §40, N.B., and footnote 4, p. 84.

<sup>2</sup> To hear = *entendre*; to hear from someone = *avoir des nouvelles de quelqu'un*, e.g. *J'ai eu de ses nouvelles*, I have heard from him; *vous aurez de leurs nouvelles*, you will hear from them.

*paraître*, to appear, seem  
*penser*, to think  
*préférer*, to prefer  
*pouvoir*, to be able, can  
*reconnaitre*, to acknowledge  
*regarder*, to look at  
*revenir*, to come back  
*savoir*, to know how to

*sembler*, to seem, appear  
*souhaiter*, to wish  
*valoir mieux*, to be better  
     (used impersonally)  
*venir*, to come  
*voir*, to see  
*vouloir*, to wish, be willing,  
     will.

### The Infinitive with "DE."

§ 165. The Infinitive with **de** is used:

1. After most **impersonal** expressions (except *il faut* and *il vaut mieux*).

Ex. (a) *Il sera nécessaire de l'attendre*, it will be necessary to wait for him.

(b) *Il est temps de partir*, it is time to start.

2. After certain adjectives (mostly denoting a feeling), as:

<i>capable</i> , capable	<i>fier</i> , proud
<i>certain</i> , certain	<i>heureux</i> , happy
<i>content</i> , pleased	<i>fâché</i> , sorry
<i>curieux</i> , curious	<i>impatient</i> , impatient
<i>désolé</i> , (very) sorry	<i>incertain</i> , uncertain
<i>digne</i> , worthy	<i>indigne</i> , unworthy
<i>fatigué</i> , tired	<i>sûr</i> , sure, certain.

(See also §167, N.B.)

§ 166. The following are among the commonest verbs requiring **de** before a following infinitive:

<i>accuser</i> , to accuse	
<i>achever</i> , to finish	
<i>affecter</i> , to affect	
<i>avertir</i> , to warn	
<i>avoir peur</i> , to be afraid, fear	
<i>blâmer</i> , to blame	
<i>cesser</i> , to cease	
<i>charger</i> , to intrust	
<i>choisir</i> , to choose	
<i>commander</i> , to command, order	
<i>conseiller</i> , to advise	
<i>se contenter</i> , to be content to	

<i>craindre</i> , to fear	
<i>crier</i> , to shout	
<i>décider</i> , to decide	
<i>défendre</i> , to forbid	
<i>dépêcher</i> , to hasten, make haste	
<i>dire</i> , to bid, tell	
<i>écrire</i> , to write	
<i>empêcher</i> , to prevent, hinder	
<i>ennuyer</i> , to tire, weary	
<i>entreprendre</i> , to undertake	
<i>essayer</i> , to try, endeavour	
<i>éviter</i> , to avoid	

<i>excuser</i> , to excuse	<i>plaindre</i> , to pity
<i>s'excuser</i> , to apologize	(se) <i>plaindre</i> , to complain
<i>faire bien</i> , to do well	<i>prier</i> , to beg
<i>faire mieux</i> , to have (do) better <sup>1</sup>	<i>promettre</i> , to promise
<i>faire semblant</i> , to pretend	<i>se rappeler</i> , to remember
<i>féliciter</i> , to congratulate	<i>recommander</i> , to recommend
<i>finir</i> , to finish	<i>refuser</i> , to refuse
<i>se flatter</i> , to flatter oneself	<i>regretter</i> , to regret
<i>frémir</i> , to shudder	<i>se réjouir</i> , to rejoice
<i>gronder</i> , to scold	<i>remercier</i> , to thank
<i>se hâter</i> , to hasten	<i>se repentir</i> , to repent
<i>jurer</i> , to swear	<i>reprocher</i> , to reproach
<i>louer</i> , to praise	<i>résoudre</i> , to resolve
<i>manquer</i> , to fail	<i>rire</i> , to laugh
<i>se mêler</i> , to mingle, meddle	<i>risquer</i> , to risk
<i>menacer</i> , to threaten	<i>rougir</i> , to blush
<i>mériter</i> , to deserve	<i>souffrir</i> , to suffer
<i>mourir</i> , to die	<i>souhaiter</i> , to wish
<i>négliger</i> , to neglect	<i>soupçonner</i> , to suspect
<i>oublier</i> , to forget	<i>se souvenir</i> , to remember
<i>pardonner</i> , to forgive	<i>supplier</i> , to beseech
<i>parier</i> , to bet, wager	<i>tenter</i> , to attempt, tempt
<i>permettre</i> , to allow	<i>trembler</i> , to tremble
<i>persuader</i> , to persuade	<i>se vanter</i> , to boast.

### The Infinitive with “A.”

§ 167. The Infinitive with **a** is used:

1. With verbs of **learning** and **teaching**, as :

(a) *Cet enfant apprend* (§256) à écrire (§243), this child is learning to write.

(b) *Mon professeur m'enseigne* à parler français, my master teaches me to speak French.

2. For the English passive in such phrases as *Une maison à louer*, a house to (be) let; *un terrain à vendre*, a plot of land to be sold; *il n'y a rien à faire*, there is nothing to be done.

Ex. *Votre cheval est-il à vendre?* Is your horse to be sold (for sale)?

<sup>1</sup> As in : You had better stay here. vous ferez mieux de rester ici.

3. After certain adjectives, such as :

<i>facile,*</i> easy	<i>beau,*</i> fine
<i>difficile,*</i> difficult	<i>disposé,</i> disposed
<i>prompt,</i> prompt	<i>habile,</i> clever
<i>lent,</i> slow	<i>utile,*</i> useful
<i>prêt,</i> ready	<i>le premier,</i> the first
<i>impossible,*</i> impossible	<i>le dernier,</i> the last.
<i>bon,*</i> good	

Ex. (a) *Cette difficulté est facile à surmonter,* that difficulty is easy to overcome.

(b) *Je suis prêt à vous accompagner,* I am ready to accompany you.

(c) *Le capitaine fut le dernier à quitter le vaisseau,* the captain was the last to leave the ship.

N.B.—The adjectives given above and marked with an asterisk (\*) are followed by **de** when accompanied by the verb **être** used impersonally.

Ex (a) *Il est facile de surmonter cette difficulté,* it is easy to overcome that difficulty.

(b) *Il sera impossible de le faire,* it will be impossible to do it.

§ 168. The following list contains the chief verbs requiring **à** before an infinitive :

*accoutumer,* to accustom  
*aider,* to help  
*aimer,* to like, love  
*s'amuser,* to amuse oneself  
*appeler,* to call  
*apprendre,* to learn  
*apprêter,* to prepare  
*aspirer,* to aspire  
*s'attendre,* to expect  
*autoriser,* to authorize  
*avoir,* to have  
*chercher,* to seek  
*commencer,* to begin  
*condamner,* to condemn  
*consentir,* to consent  
*consister,* to consist

*contribuer,* to contribute  
*se décider,* to make up one's mind  
*destiner,* to destine [mind  
*donner,* to give  
*employer,* to use  
*encourager,* to encourage  
*engager,* to invite  
*enseigner,* to teach  
*exciter,* to urge  
*exercer,* to exercise  
*se fatiguer,* to tire oneself  
*gagner,* to gain  
*habituer,* to accustom  
*hésiter,* to hesitate  
*inviter,* to invite [self to  
*se mettre,* to begin, set one-

*montrer*, to show  
*parvenir*, to succeed  
*penser*, to think  
*persiste*r, to persist  
*se plaire*, to delight  
*pousser*, to urge on  
*préparer*, to prepare  
*renoncer*, to give up (an idea)

*rester*, to remain  
*réussir*, to succeed  
*servir*, to serve  
*songer*, to think  
*tarder*, to delay  
*travailler*, to work  
*trouver*, to find  
*viser*, to aim.

### EXERCISE XXX.

[On §§163—168.]

Translate into French :

1. When do you wish (*désirer*) to start, to-morrow or Thursday?
2. I am sorry not to have met your friend the other day. 3. I am ready to give you every<sup>1</sup> particular. 4. It was easy to guess that he was a foreigner. 5. Come (§216) [and]<sup>2</sup> dine (Infinitive) with us next Tuesday.<sup>3</sup> 6. In summer, I prefer to sleep (§207) in the open air (*en plein air*). 7. He is certain to succeed; he has worked very hard (*dur*). 8. He tried to enter (into) the room, but the door was locked (*était fermée à clef*). 9. What will you gain by doing (§245) it (*à le faire*)? 10. Are you disposed to accept our offer? 11. It is time to go home; our mother is waiting [for] us. 12. It began to rain (§223) heavily (*à verse*) and we were obliged to stay at home. 13. I am longing to (*Il me tarde de*) see (§228) them. 14. Go (§199) and fetch the doctor; the child seems to be very ill. 15. We have decided (*décider*) to spend our holidays at the seaside (*au bord de la mer*). 16. He would have forgotten to invite you if he had not seen (§228) you. 17. Be kind enough (§228) to arrive earlier in future (*à l'avenir*). 18. There are not many houses to be sold in this neighbourhood. 19. He would be the last [man] to blame you. 20. It is difficult to succeed without friends or (without) money. 21. Will (§229) you (*voulez-vous*) lend me what I have asked you? 22. We regret having (*say to have*) lost such<sup>4</sup> a good opportunity. 23. I forbid you to leave the house without my permission. 24. Have I not told (§242) you to clear away (§213)? 25. They dare not go out (§214); they are tired of meeting (Infinitive) those men.

<sup>1</sup> Observe §104, Note.

<sup>2</sup> Note the construction after a verb of motion: 1st, *and* is not translated; 2nd, the following verb is put in the Infinitive: *Allez le chercher*, go and fetch it.

<sup>3</sup> §60      <sup>4</sup> Observe §102.

## CHAPTER XXV.

### Must, Ought, Could, Might, Can, etc.

§ 169. **Must**, I have to, I am to, are translated by **devoir** (§220), as:

*Je dois le faire* (§245), I must (or have to, or am to) do it.

**I had to, I was to**, are rendered by **je devais** (Imperfect), **je dus** (Preterite), or **j'ai dû** (Past Indefinite), according to the context.

Ex. (a) *Je devais arriver tous les matins à huit heures*,  
I had to arrive every morning at eight o'clock.

[See §155, 1—use of the Imperfect.]

(b) *J'ai dû emprunter de l'argent hier*, I had (have had) to borrow money yesterday.

[See §159—use of the Past Indefinite ]

§ 170. **Ought** followed by the *Present Infinitive* is rendered by the *Conditional Present* of **devoir** followed by the French Infinitive, as:

*Je devrais rester ici*, I ought to stay here.

When *ought* is followed by the *Past Infinitive*, it is translated by the *Conditional Past* of **devoir** followed by the French *Present Infinitive*, as:

*Vous auriez dû répondre*, you ought to have answered.

§ 171. **Could, might.** The rules and constructions given in the preceding paragraph for *ought* apply to *could* and *might*, **pouvoir** (§224) being used instead of **devoir**.

Ex. (a) *Je pourrais payer*, I could (or might) pay (i.e. I should be able).

(b) *Nous aurions pu lui parler*, we could (or might) have spoken to him (i.e. we should have been able).

N.B.—If *could* and *might* mean in English *was* or *were able*, and not *should be able*, they are rendered in French either by the Imperfect or some past tense of the Indicative—according to the context.

Ex. (a) *Je pouvais le voir tous les jours*, I could see him every day (i.e., I was able).

[See §155, 1—use of the Imperfect.]

(b) *Je n'ai pas pu le voir hier soir*, I could not see him last night (i.e., I was not able).

[See §157—use of the Past Indefinite.]

§ 172. **I should like** = *je voudrais* (§229), **I should have liked** = *j'aurais voulu*.

Ex. (a) *Je voudrais bien vous aider*, I should very much like to help you.

(b) *Il aurait voulu venir*, he would have liked to come.

§ 173. **Can** must be translated by *savoir* (§226), and not by *pouvoir*, when it means to know how to, as:

(a) *Je sais nager*, I can swim (i.e., I know how to).

(b) *Savez-vous parler allemand?* Can you speak German? (i.e., do you know how to?)

§ 174. **To have just** is rendered by *venir de* (§216) followed by the Present Infinitive of the French verb.

Ex. (a) *Il vient de rentrer*, he has just come home.

(b) *Nous venions de sortir*, we had just gone out.

N.B.—**Venir à** = to happen to.

Ex. *S'il venait à tomber*, if he happened to (or should) fall.

### EXERCISE XXXI.

[On §§169—174.]

1. I should like (§229) to know (§236) this gentleman; introduce (*présenter*) me to him.
2. He ought (§220) not to be late.<sup>1</sup>
3. If I could<sup>2</sup> (§224) do (§245) it, I should not hesitate.
4. Can this child read?
5. He has just (§216) gone out (§214); will you (*voulez-vous*) call again (*repasser*)?
6. I have to (§220) call again this afternoon.
7. The slightest (*moindre*, §36) mistake might (§224) cause a great deal (*beaucoup*) of trouble.
8. I have had (§220) to give him an interest in (to give an interest in = *intéresser dans*) our undertaking.
9. You ought (§220) not to have warned (§216) them; they did not deserve it.
10. You could (§224) have acted in (*en*) his absence; now it is too late.<sup>1</sup>
11. They must (§220) have told (§242) you why we did not accept their terms (*conditions*, fem.).
12. If he happens (§216) to wake up, call me.
13. I am to (§220) accompany my sister to a party; do not expect me.
14. They had just (§216) dined when we arrived.
15. They would like (§229) to oblige you, but they are so poor themselves!
16. You ought (§220) to have sent (§200) your luggage in advance (*d'avance*).

<sup>1</sup> Note the following: *Je suis en retard*, I am late; *il est tard*, it is late.

<sup>2</sup> §171, N.B.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### The Adverb. (L'adverbe.)

#### Place of the Adverb.

§ 175. An adverb can never be placed in French between the subject and the verb ; it usually follows the verb, or, in a compound tense, comes between the auxiliary and the participle.

Ex. (a) *Il arriva bientôt*, he soon arrived (**not** *il bientôt arriva*).

(b) *Nous avons beaucoup aimé la pièce*, we liked the play (performance) very much.

§ 176. Adverbs indicating definite time and adverbs of place follow the participle.

Ex. (a) *Je lui ai écrit* (§243) *hier*, I wrote to him yesterday.

(b) *Vous l'auriez cherché partout*, you would have looked for it everywhere.

#### Notes on Adverbs.

§ 177. **Oui** translates yes in reply to a question, as :

*A-t-il plu* (§223) *cet après-midi ? Oui.*

Did it rain this afternoon ? Yes.

But **si** is used for yes in answer to a negative question or to contradict a statement.

Ex. (a) *N'est-il pas revenu* (§216) ? *Si, il est revenu tout à l'heure.*

Has he not returned ? Yes, he returned just now.

§ 178. **Adverbs of quantity** take the preposition **de** before the substantive following them ; for that reason the pronoun **en**, *of it, some*, etc., must be used in an answer containing one of those adverbs. (Cf. §68.)

Ex. (a) *J'ai assez d'argent*, I have money enough.

(b) *Avez-vous des roses dans votre jardin ? Oui, nous en avons beaucoup.*

Have you any roses in your garden ? Yes, we have many.

N.B.—The adverb **bien**, *much, many*, requires the preposition **de** and the **definite article** before the substantive which follows, as : *Il y a bien des années*, many years ago.

§ 179. **Tout**, *quite, altogether*, varies for gender and number when followed by a feminine adjective or participle beginning with a **consonant** or **h aspirate**.

Ex. (a) *Elle était toute malheureuse*, she was quite unhappy.

But (b) *Elle était tout étonnée*, she was quite surprised.

### Formation of Adverbs of Manner from Adjectives.

§ 180. Adverbs of manner are formed by adding the termination **ment** to the feminine of the adjective.

<i>discret</i>	<i>discrètement</i>	discreetly
<i>heureux</i>	<i>heureusement</i>	happily.

§ 181. **Exceptions.**—1. If the masculine of the adjective ends in a vowel, **ment** is added to the masculine.

<i>vrai</i>	<i>vraiment</i>	truly
<i>poli</i>	<i>poliment</i>	politely.

Note, however:

<i>gai</i>	<i>gaîment or gaiement</i>	gaily
<i>assidu</i>	<i>assidûment</i>	assiduously
also: <i>fou</i>	<i>follement</i>	foolishly.
<i>mou</i>	<i>mollement</i>	softly
<i>nouveau</i>	<i>nouvellement</i>	newly.

The adverbs are formed from the feminine of *fou, mou, nouveau*.

2. Adjectives ending in **nt** form their adverbs by changing that ending into **mment**.

<i>prudent</i>	<i>prudemment</i>	cautiously
<i>courant</i>	<i>couramment</i>	fluently.

Note, however:

<i>lent</i>	<i>lentement</i>	slowly
<i>présent</i>	<i>présentement</i>	at present,

which follow the general rule (§ 180).

3. The following **nine** adjectives take an **acute accent** over the **e** preceding the termination **ment**:

<i>commun</i>	<i>communément</i>	commonly
<i>confus</i>	<i>confusément</i>	confusedly
<i>diffus</i>	<i>diffusément</i>	diffusedly
<i>exprès</i>	<i>expressément</i>	expressly
<i>importun</i>	<i>importunément</i>	importunately
<i>obscur</i>	<i>obscurement</i>	obscurely

<i>précis</i>	<i>précisément</i>	precisely
<i>profond</i>	<i>profondément</i>	profoundly
<i>profus</i>	<i>profusément</i>	profusely.

4. Eight adjectives ending in *e* mute also take an **acute accent** over that *e* and add *ment*.

<i>aveugle</i>	<i>aveuglément</i>	blindly
<i>commode</i>	<i>commodément</i>	conveniently
<i>conforme</i>	<i>conformément</i>	conformably
<i>énorme</i>	<i>énormément</i>	enormously
<i>immense</i>	<i>immensément</i>	immensely
<i>incommode</i>	<i>incommodément</i>	inconveniently
<i>opiniâtre</i>	<i>opiniâtrétement</i>	obstinately
<i>uniforme</i>	<i>uniformément</i>	uniformly.

§ 182. The following are formed irregularly :

<i>bref</i>	<i>brièvement</i>	briefly
<i>impuni</i>	<i>impunément</i>	with impunity
<i>gentil</i>	<i>gentiment</i>	nicely, prettily
<i>traître</i>	<i>traîtreusement</i>	treacherously.

For the adverbs corresponding to *bon*, *mauvais*, *petit*, see § 36.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### The Preposition. (La préposition.)

§ 183. The following are some of the more common prepositions :

<i>à</i> , to, at	<i>entre</i> , between
<i>après</i> , after	<i>envers</i> , towards (of feelings)
<i>avant</i> , before (of time, order)	<i>hors</i> , except
<i>avec</i> , with	<i>malgré</i> , in spite of
<i>chez</i> , at the house of	<i>outre</i> , besides
<i>contre</i> , against	<i>par</i> , by, through
<i>dans</i> , in, into	<i>parmi</i> , among
<i>de</i> , of, from	<i>pour</i> , for (not of time)
<i>depuis</i> , since, from	<i>sans</i> , without
<i>derrière</i> , behind	<i>selon</i> , according to
<i>dès</i> , from (of time)	<i>sous</i> , under
<i>devant</i> , before (of place)	<i>sur</i> , upon
<i>en</i> , in, into	<i>vers</i> , towards (a place).

Note.—**Vers** is used of direction, also when expressing a time. **Envers** implies a moral relation, and is used of feelings, behaviour, etc.

Ex. (a) *Nous allions* (§199) **vers** le village, we were going towards the village.

(b) *Ils arriveront vers midi*, they will arrive about (towards) midday.

(c) *Ils se conduisent* (§234) bien **envers nous**, they behave well towards us.

§ 184. There are also many compound prepositions formed chiefly with the help of substantives or of adverbs followed by the preposition **de**. A few of these are:

*à cause de*, because of

*à côté de*, beside

*à force de*, by dint of

*à moins de*, without,  
unless

*à travers*, } through,

*au travers de*, } across

*au-delà de*, beyond

*au-devant de*,<sup>1</sup> in front  
of, towards

*au-dessous de*, below

*au-dessus de*, above

*au lieu de*, instead of

*autour de*, around, round

*en dépit de*, in spite of

*faute de*, for want of

*jusqu'à*, up to, until

*le long de*, along

*pendant*, during, for (of time)

*près de*, near to

*quant à*, as for, with regard  
to

*sauf*, except

*vis-à-vis de*, opposite to

Note the phrase: *par-dessus le marché*, into the bargain.

### Notes on Prepositions.

§ 185. The prepositions **à**, **de**, **en**, are usually repeated before every noun; no definite rule can be given with regard to other prepositions.

Ex. (a) *Il était accompagné de ses parents et de ses amis intimes*, he was accompanied by his parents and his intimate friends.

(b) *Nous irons* (§199) **à Paris**, **à Bruxelles et à Genève**, we shall go to Paris, Brussels and Geneva.

§ 186. Prepositions must never be placed after the word which they govern.

Ex. **À quoi travaillez-vous?** What are you working at?

<sup>1</sup> Note the phrase, *aller au-devant de quelqu'un*, to go and meet someone: *Il est venu au-devant de nous*, he came to meet us.

§ 187. All prepositions are followed by the **Present Infinitive** except **en**, which requires the Present Participle.

Ex. (a) *Il sortit* (§214) *sans fermer la porte*, he went out without closing the door.

(b) *Je me suis fait* (§245) *mal en ouvrant la fenêtre*, I hurt myself in opening the window.

§ 188. **Après** is followed by the **Past Infinitive**, instead of the Present Participle found in English, as:

*Après avoir traversé la rivière*, after crossing the river.

§ 189. **Pour** is used before an Infinitive to translate **to** when the latter means *in order to*, *for the purpose of*, as:

*Je l'ai fait* (§245) *pour vous plaire* (§245), I did it to (in order to) please you.

§ 190. **By** before a Present Participle is rendered by **en** except after **commencer** and **finir**, when it is rendered by **par** and the Infinitive.

Ex. (a) *En travaillant ainsi, vous réussirez*, by working thus, you will succeed.

(b) *Il commença par le récompenser*, he began by rewarding him.

§ 191. **In**, **to**, and **at** are translated by **en** before the names of countries, provinces, and continents, and by **à** before names of towns.

Ex. (a) *Ils sont en France ; ils iront* (§199) *en Espagne le mois prochain*. They are in France ; they will go to Spain next month.

(b) *Votre ami est-il encore à Marseille ?* Is your friend still in Marseilles ?

N.B.—Note *au Japon*, in (or to) Japan ; *au Canada*, in (or to) Canada ; *au Mexique*, in (or to) Mexico ; *au Pays de Galles*, in (or to) Wales ; *au Brésil*, in (or to) Brazil ; *aux Indes*, in (or to) India.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### The Conjunction. (La conjonction.)

§ 192. Conjunctions may be divided into *simple* or *compound*. The principal simple conjunctions are :

<i>ainsi</i> , so, thus, therefore	<i>ni</i> , <sup>1</sup> neither, nor
<i>aussi</i> , so, also	<i>or</i> , now, but
<i>car</i> , for, because	<i>ou</i> , either, or
<i>cependant</i> , however	<i>plutôt</i> , rather
<i>comme</i> , as	<i>puisque</i> , since
<i>donc</i> , then, therefore	<i>quand</i> , when
<i>encore</i> , yet	<i>que</i> , <sup>2</sup> that
<i>et</i> , and	<i>quoique</i> , <sup>3</sup> though, although
<i>lorsque</i> , when	<i>si</i> , if
<i>mais</i> , but	<i>soit</i> , either, or.
<i>néanmoins</i> , nevertheless	

§ 193. Of the principal compound conjunctions, some govern the Indicative, others the Subjunctive.

The following govern the Indicative :

<i>à mesure que</i> , in proportion as	<i>parce que</i> , because
<i>après que</i> , after	<i>pendant que</i> , while, during
<i>attendu que</i> , whereas	<i>tandis que</i> , while
<i>aussitôt que</i> , as soon as	<i>tant que</i> , as long as,
<i>depuis que</i> , since	as much as
<i>dès que</i> , since, as soon as	<ivu i="" que<="">, considering that.</ivu>

§ 194. For those governing the Subjunctive, see § 140.

<sup>1</sup> *Neither...nor* is translated by *ni* repeated, and the following verb requires *ne*, as : *Ni lui ni son frère ne désirent vous voir*, neither he nor his brother wishes to see you.

<sup>2</sup> The conjunction *que* must always be expressed in French : *Il m'a dit qu'il l'enverrait*, he told me he would send it.

<sup>3</sup> *Quoique* governs the Subjunctive, all the others the Indicative.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

[On §§175—194. In the following exercise, whenever an adverb of manner occurs, the corresponding adjective is given; the student will form the adverb from the latter according to the foregoing rules.]

1. You will do (§245) it to please (§255) me, won't you?<sup>1</sup>
2. Why does the ship bear (to bear = *se diriger*) towards that island?
3. The partners will begin by preparing an agreement (*un contrat*).
4. They were walking very slowly (*lent*); they looked (§253) very tired.
5. Answer (to) my questions briefly (*bref*).<sup>2</sup>
6. He listened to me very attentively (*attentif*).
7. We have acted blindly (*aveugle*), in spite of his advice.
8. After reading<sup>3</sup> (§247) it carefully (*soigneux*), he gave it back to me.
9. I have just (§174) left them, but not (*non*) without scolding them.
10. I know (§226) what you are speaking of, he said (*dit-il*)<sup>4</sup> gaily (*gai*).
11. Were there not twenty people (*personnes*) without counting the children? Yes, there were<sup>5</sup> at least (*au moins*) thirty.
12. Do you speak French fluently (*courant*)? No, I have never lived (*habiter*) in France.
13. When they left this country, they went (§199) to America.
14. We suddenly noticed that the train had stopped.<sup>6</sup>
15. She will soon return (§216) from Wales; she was here recently (*récent*).
16. By starting (§211) at half-past two, you will arrive early.
17. We could<sup>7</sup> (§224) see (§228) without being seen.
18. Act cautiously (*prudent*).
19. We used to know (§236) them many years ago; we have lost sight of them (*nous les avons perdus de vue*).
20. I shall be in Brussels when you are<sup>8</sup> in Geneva.
21. They are enormously (*énorme*) rich; have you ever been to their house (*chez eux*)?
22. If he is not here about (*vers*) two o'clock, I shall go (§199) and meet<sup>9</sup> him.
23. I have looked for it everywhere.
24. I am tired of always repeating the same thing.
25. Which street did you come (§216) by?

<sup>1</sup> See §122.

<sup>2</sup> Mind the place of the adverb in French.    <sup>3</sup> Observe §188.

<sup>4</sup> In quotations, turn such words as *he said*, *he answered*, *he exclaimed*, etc., into *dit-il*, *répondit-il*, *s'écria-t-il*, etc.

<sup>5</sup> Observe §68.    <sup>6</sup> See footnote 1, p. 80.    <sup>7</sup> Observe §171, N.B.

<sup>8</sup> Observe §161.    <sup>9</sup> See footnote, p. 100.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

(Verbes irréguliers.)

---

The student should **carefully** read the following hints.

§ 195. In the regular verbs, the stem remains invariable, whilst the endings *alone* change according to the mood, tense and person of the verb; whereas in the *irregular* verbs the **stem is not uniform** throughout, as: *venir*, *viens*; *vouloir*, *veulent*, etc.

§ 196. In the following list, the irregular verbs are arranged according to their conjugation, a few verbs which are rarely used being omitted. The tenses or persons of certain tenses, which are irregularly formed, are printed in **thick type**.

§ 197. The *Imperfect Indicative*, the *Imperfect Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, and the *Compound tenses* are omitted because they can always be formed as stated in §113, which should be carefully revised. The *Conditional* is found by adding **s** to the first person singular of the Future.

§ 198. The student therefore, when learning any given verb, will begin by learning the **primitive tenses**—viz. the *Present Infinitive*, *Present Participle*, *Past Participle*, *Present Indicative*, and *Preterite*; this being done, he will learn those tenses which are printed in **thick type** (and which are therefore irregular). The other tenses will be formed as explained in the preceding paragraph.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Préterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verba similari conjugated.
§ 199. <b>all-er</b> <i>to go</i>	all-ant all-é	vais vas ya all-ons all-ez yont	all-ai	irai	all-é all-es all-é all-ions all-iez all-ent	<i>Imperative ya, but vas before y and en. (See § 113, Note IV.)</i> être in compound tenses S'en aller, <i>to go away</i>
§ 200. <b>envoy-er</b> <i>to send</i>	envoy-ant envoy-é	envoy-e envoy-es envoy-e envoy-ons envoy-ez envoy-ent	envoy-ai	enverrai	envoy-é envoy-es envoy-e envoy-ions envoy-iez envoy-ent	<i>See also § 151</i> Renvoyer, <i>to send back</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 201. <b>acquér-ir</b> <i>to acquire</i>	acqué-ant acquis	acquier-s acquier-s acquier-t acquier-ons acquier-ez acquier-ent	acqui-is	acquer-rai	acquier-e acquier-es acquier-e acquier-ions acquier-iez acquier-ent	Conquérir, <i>to conquer</i>
§ 202. <b>assail-lir</b> <i>to assail</i>	assail-ant assail-i		assail-is	assail-irai	assail-e assail-es assail-e assail-ions assail-iez assail-ent	Tressail-lir, <i>to start, to shudder</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION, contd.

Infinitive,	Participles.	Present Indic.	Prterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 203. <b>bouillir</b> to boil	<b>bouillant</b> <b>bouilli</b>	<b>bouill-s</b> bou-s <b>bou-t</b> bouill-on-s bouill-ez bouill-ent	<b>bouill-is</b>	<b>bouill-irai</b>	bouill-e bouill-es bouill-e bouill-on-s bouill-ez bouill-ent	<i>Cannot be used transitively as in English; used with faire, as:</i> <b>faites</b> bouillir de l'eau, boil some water
§ 204. <b>courir</b> to run	<b>cour-ant</b> <b>cour-u</b>	<b>cour-s</b> cour-s <b>court</b> cour-on-s cour-ez cour-ent	<b>cour-us</b>	<b>courrai</b>	cour-e cour-es cour-e cour-on-s cour-ez cour-ent	<i>Accourir, to hasten</i> <i>Concourir, to compete</i> <i>Parcourir, to traverse</i> <i>Secourir, to help</i>
§ 205. <b>couvrir</b> to cover	<b>couvr-ant</b> <b>couver-t</b>	<b>couvr-e</b> couvr-es couvr-e couvr-on-s couvr-ez couvr-ent	<b>couvr-is</b>	<b>couvr-irai</b>	couvr-e couvr-es couvr-e couvr-on-s couvr-ez couvr-ent	<i>Découvrir, to discover</i> <i>Offrir, to offer</i> <i>Ouvrir, to open</i> <i>Souffrir, to suffer</i>
§ 206. <b>cueillir</b> to pluck	<b>cueill-ant</b> <b>cueilli</b>	<b>cueill-e</b> cueill-es cueill-e cueill-on-s cueill-ez cueill-ent	<b>cueill-is</b>	<b>cueill-erai</b>	cueill-e cueill-es cueill-e cueill-on-s cueill-ez cueill-ent	<i>Accueillir, to welcome</i> <i>Se recueillir, to collect one's thoughts</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION, *contd.*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Pretérit.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verba similarly conjugated.
§ 207. <b>dormir</b> <i>to sleep</i>	<b>dorm-ant</b> <b>dorm-i</b>	<b>dor-s</b> <b>dor-s</b> <b>dor-t</b> dorm-ons dorm-ez dorm-ent (obsolete)	dorm-is	dorm-irai	dorm-e dorm-es dorm-e dorm-jons dorm-iez dorm-ent (obsolete)	S'endormir, to fall asleep
§ 208. <b>faillir</b> <i>to fail</i>	(obsolete) <b>faill-i</b>		faill-is			Its use is chiefly restricted to such phrases as : Je faillis (or j'ai failli) tomber, I nearly fell
§ 209. <b>fuir</b> <i>to flee</i>	<b>fuy-ant</b> <b>fui-i</b>	fu-is fu-is fu-it fuy-ons fuy-ez fui-ent	fu-is	fu-irai	fu-i-e fu-i-es fu-i-e fuy-ions fuy-ez fui-ent	S'enfuir, to flee
§ 210. <b>mourir</b> <i>to die</i>	<b>mour-ant</b> <b>mort</b>		mour-us	mour-rai	meur-e meur-es meur-e moureons moure meur-ent	être in compound tenses
§ 211. <b>partir</b> <i>to depart</i>	<b>part-ant</b> <b>part-i</b>		part-is	part-irai	part-e part-es part-e part-ions part-ez part-ent	Repartir, to start again, to reply être in compound tenses for both verbs (but not for repartir when meaning to reply)

SECOND CONJUGATION, *contd.*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Preterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 212. <b>sentir</b> <i>to feel, to smell</i>	<b>sent-ant</b> <b>sent-i</b>	sen-s sen-s sen-t sent-ons sent-ez sent-ent	sent-is	sent-irai	sent-e sent-es sent-e sent-ions sent-ez sent-ent	Consentir, <i>to consent</i> Mentir, <i>to lie, tell a lie</i> Pressentir, <i>to forebode</i> Ressentir, <i>to resent</i> Se repentir, <i>to repent</i>
§ 213. <b>servir</b> <i>to serve</i>	<b>serv-ant</b> <b>serv-i</b>		serv-is	serv-irai	serv-e serv-es serv-e serv-ions serv-ez serv-ent	Desservir, <i>to clear the table</i>
§ 214. <b>sortir</b> <i>to go out</i>	<b>sort-ant</b> <b>sort-i</b>		sort-is	sort-irai	sort-e sort-es sort-e sort-ions sort-ez sort-ent	Ressortir, <i>to go out again</i> être in compound tenses for both verbs
§ 215. <b>tenir</b> <i>to hold</i>	<b>ten-ant</b> <b>ten-u</b>			<b>tien-drai</b>	tienn-e tienn-es tien-t ten-ons ten-ez tien-n-ent	Appartenir, <i>to belong</i> Contenir, <i>to contain</i> Entretenir, <i>to keep up</i> Maintenir, <i>to maintain</i> Obtenir, <i>to obtain</i> Retenir, <i>to retain</i> Soutenir, <i>to assert; &amp;c.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION, contd.

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Préterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 216. <b>ven-ir</b> <i>to come</i>	<b>ven-ant</b> <b>ven-u</b>	<b>vien-s</b> <b>vien-s</b> <b>vien-t</b> <b>ven-ons</b> <b>ven-ez</b> <b>vien-n-ent</b>	<b>yin-s</b> <b>yin-s</b> <b>yin-t</b> <b>yin-mes</b> <b>yin-tes</b> <b>yin-rent</b>	<b>yien-d-rai</b>	<b>yien-n-e</b> <b>yien-n-es</b> <b>yien-n-e</b> <b>yen-ions</b> <b>ven-iez</b> <b>yien-n-ent</b>	Convenir, to suit, to agree * Devenir, to become * Intervenir, to intervene * Parvenir, to reach Prévenir, to warn * Revenir, to return * Se souvenir, to remember être in compound tenses, also compound past tense marked *
§ 217. <b>vêt-ir</b> <i>to clothe</i>	<b>vêt-ant</b> <b>vêt-u</b>		<b>vêt-is</b>	<b>vêt-itai</b>	<b>vêt-e</b> <b>vêt-es</b> <b>vêt-e</b> <b>vêti-ons</b> <b>vêt-iez</b> <b>vêt-ent</b>	

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 218. <b>avoir</b> <i>to have</i>	<b>ay-ant</b> <b>eu</b>	<b>ai</b> <b>as</b> <b>a</b>	<b>e-us</b>	<b>au-rai</b>	<b>ai-e</b> <b>ai-es</b> <b>ai-t</b> <b>ay-ons</b> <b>ay-ez</b> <b>ont</b>	<i>Imperf.</i> : <b>avais</b> <i>Imperative</i> : <b>ale</b> <b>ayons</b> <b>ayez</b>
---------------------------------------	----------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------	---------------	---	--

THIRD CONJUGATION, *contd.*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Pretérit.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 219. <b>s'asseoir</b> <i>to sit down</i>	<b>s'asseay-ant</b> assis	m'assied-s t'assied-s s'assied	m'ass-is	m'assié-rai	m'assey-e t'assey-es s'assey-e	Se rasseoir, <i>to sit down again</i> Also assois in Present & assoirai in Future
§ 220. <b>devoir</b> <i>to owe</i>	<b>dé-ant</b> dû ( <i>fem. due</i> )	nous assey- ons vous assey-ez s'assey-ent	d-us	dév-rai	doiy-e doiy-es doiy-e	Si mouvoir, <i>to move (feelings)</i> , and Promouvoir, <i>to promote, have in past part. ému and promu</i>
§ 221. <b>falloir</b> <i>to be necessary</i>	<b>(wanting)</b> fall-u	fau-t	fall-ut	fau-d-ra	fail-e	Impersonal
§ 222. <b>mouvoir</b> <i>to move</i>	<b>mouy-ant</b> mû ( <i>fem. mue</i> )	meu-s meu-s meu-t	mu-s	mouv-rai	meuv-e meuv-es meuv-e	Impersonal
§ 223. <b>pleuvoir</b> <i>to rain</i>	<b>pleuy-ant</b> plu	pleu-t	pl-ut	pleuv-ra	pleuv-e	Impersonal

## THIRD CONJUGATION, cont'd.

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Préterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 224. <b>pouvoir</b> <i>to be able, can</i>	<b>pouy-ant</b> <b>pu</b>	<b>peu-x or pui-s</b> peu-x peu-t pouv-ons pouv-ez peuv-ent	<b>p-us</b>	<b>pourrai</b>	<b>puiss-e</b> puiss-es puiss-e puiss-ions puiss-iez puiss-ent	No Imperative Puis-je only in Present Indicative
§ 225. <b>recevoir</b> <i>to receive</i>		<b>recoi-s</b> recoi-s recoi-t recev-ons recev-ez recoiy-ent	<b>req-us</b>	<b>recev-rai</b>	recoiy-e recoiy-es recoiy-e recev-ions recev-iez recoiy-ent	Apercevoir, <i>to perceive</i> Concevoir, <i>to conceive</i> Décevoir, <i>to deceive</i>
§ 226. <b>savoir</b> <i>to know</i>	<b>sachant</b> <b>su</b>	<b>sai-s</b> sai-s sai-t say-ons say-ez say-ent		<b>sau-rai</b>	sach-e sach-es sach-e sach-ions sach-iez sach-ent	Imperf. Indic.: sayais Imperative: sache sachons sachez
§ 227. <b>valoir</b> <i>to worth</i>		<b>val-ant</b> <b>val-u</b>	<b>yal-us</b>	<b>yau-d-rai</b>	yaill-e yaill-es val-l-e val-ions val-iez val-l-ent	Prévaloir, <i>to prevail,</i> <i>has Present Subjunc.</i> <i>prévale, prévalions,</i> <i>&amp;c.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION, *contd.*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Préterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 228. <b>v-oir</b> <i>to see</i>	<b>voyant</b> yu	yoi-s yoi-s yoi-t voy-ons voy-ez voy-ent	<b>vi-s</b>	<b>yer-rai</b>	yoi-e yoi-es yoi-e voy-ions voy-iez yoi-ent	Entrevoir, <i>to catch a glimpse of</i> Pourvoir, <i>to provide</i> <i>Fut.</i> , pourvoirai <i>Pret.</i> , pourvoys Prévoir, <i>to foresee</i> <i>Fut.</i> , prévoirai Revoir, <i>to see again</i> <i>Imperative:</i> <b>veuille</b> , <b>veuillez</b> = be kind enough to
§ 229. <b>vou-l-oir</b> <i>to wish,</i> <i>to be willing</i>	<b>voul-ant</b> <b>voul-u</b>	<b>voul-us</b>	<b>you-d-rai</b>	<b>veuil-l-e</b> <b>veuil-l-es</b> <b>veuil-l-e</b>	<b>vou-l-ions</b> <b>voul-ez</b> <b>veuil-l-ent</b>	

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 230. <b>absou-l-re</b> <i>to absolve</i>	<b>absol-y-ant</b> <b>absous-s</b> <i>(f. absou-te)</i>	<b>absou-s</b> absou-s <b>absout</b>	<b>absou-d-rai</b>	<b>absol-v-e</b> absol-v-es absol-v-e absol-v-ions absol-v-iez absol-v-ent	<b>batt-rais</b>	Dissoudre, <i>to dissolve</i> Résondre, <i>to resound</i> , to determine, has two forms for the past part.: résous, dissolved, and résolu, determined
§ 231. <b>batt-re</b> <i>to beat</i>	<b>batt-ant</b> <b>batt-u</b>	<b>batt-is</b>	<b>batt-rai</b>	<b>batti-e</b> batti-es batti-e batti-ions batti-ez batti-ent		Combattre, <i>to fight</i> Se battre, <i>to fight</i> <i>&amp;c.</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION, *contd.*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Pretorite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 232. <b>boi-re</b> <i>to drink</i>	<b>bu-y-ant</b> <b>bu</b>	<b>boi-s</b> boi-s boi-t bu-v-ons bu-v-ez boi-y-ent	<b>b-us</b>	<b>boi-rai</b>	<b>boi-y-e</b> boi-y-es boi-y-e bu-v-ions bu-v-iez boi-y-ent	
§ 233. <b>conclu-re</b> <i>to conclude</i>	<b>conclu-ant</b> <b>conclu</b>	<b>conclu-s</b> conclu-s conclu-t conclu-ons conclu-ez conclu-ent	<b>conclu-s</b>	<b>conclu-rai</b>	<b>conclu-e</b> conclu-es conclu-e conclu-ions conclu-iez conclu-ent	Exclure, <i>to exclude</i>
§ 234. <b>condu-i-re</b> <i>to conduct</i>	<b>condu-s-ant</b> <b>condu-t</b>	<b>condu-s</b> condu-s condu-t condu-ons condu-ez condu-ent	<b>condu-s-is</b>	<b>condu-rai</b>	<b>condui-s-e</b> condui-s-es condui-s-e condui-s-ions condui-siez condui-s-ent	Construire, <i>to build</i> Déduire, <i>to deduct</i> Détruire, <i>to destroy</i> Instruire, <i>to instruct</i> Introduire, <i>to introduce</i> Produire, <i>to produce</i> Réduire, <i>to reduce</i> Traduire, <i>to translate</i>
§ 235. <b>confi-re</b> <i>to pickle</i>	<b>confi-s-ant</b> <b>confi-t</b>	<b>confi-s</b> confi-s <b>confi-t</b> confi-s-ons confi-s-ez confi-s-ent	<b>confi-s</b>	<b>confi-rai</b>	<b>confi-s-e</b> confi-s-es confi-s-e confi-s-ions confi-siez confi-s-ent	

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, contd.

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Preterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 236. connaît-re <i>to know</i>	connai-ss- ant connai-t connai-ll	connai-s connai-s connai-t connai-ss-ons connai-ss-ss connai-ss-ent	connai-t-rai connai-ss-e connai-ss-es connai-ss-e connai-ss-ions connai-ss-iez connai-ss-ent	connai-t-rai connai-ss-e connai-ss-es connai-ss-e connai-ss-ions connai-ss-iez connai-ss-ent	connai-ss-e connai-ss-es connai-ss-e connai-ss-ions connai-ss-iez connai-ss-ent	Méconnaître, <i>not to recognize</i> Reconnaitre, <i>to recognize</i> in before t
§ 237. cou-d-re <i>to sew</i>	cous-ant cous-u	coud-s coud-s coud cous-ons cous-ez cous-ent	cous-is	coud-rai	cous-s-e cous-s-es cous-e cous-ions cous-iez cous-ent	Découdre, <i>to unsew</i> Recoudre, <i>to sew again</i> Concoude
§ 238. craign-d-re <i>to fear</i>	craign-ant craint	craign-s craign-s craint	craign-ons craign-ez craign-ent	craign-is	craign-e craign-es craign-e craign-ions craign-iez craign-ent	Contraindre, <i>to compel</i> Plaindre, <i>to pity</i> Se plaindre, <i>to complain</i>
§ 239. croi-re <i>to believe</i>	croy-ant cru	crois crois croit croy-ons croy-ez croient	crois	croi-rai	croi-e croi-es croi-e croy-ons croy-iez croi-ent	

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, contd.

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Preterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 240. <b>croî-t-re</b> <i>to grow</i>	<b>croî-s-ant</b> ( <i>f. crude</i> )	<b>croî-s</b> croî-t	<b>cr-ûs</b> cr-ût	<b>croî-t-rai</b>	<b>croî-s-s-e</b> croî-s-s-e	<b>croîre</b> in forms similar to those of croire
		croîss-ons	cr-ûmes		croîss-ions	
		croîss-ez	cr-ûtes		croîss-iez	
		croîss-ent	cr-ûrent		croîss-ent	
§ 241. <b>cui-re</b> <i>to cook</i>	<b>cui-s-ant</b> cui-t	<b>cui-s</b> cui-s	<b>cui-s-is</b>	<b>cui-rai</b>	<b>cui-s-e</b> cui-s-es	<b>faire</b> , as : <i>Je fais cuire la viande, I am cooking the meat</i>
		cui-t			cui-s-e	
		cui-s-ons			cui-s-ions	
		cui-s-ez			cui-s-iez	
		cui-s-ent			cui-s-ent	
§ 242. <b>di-re</b> <i>to say</i>	<b>di-s-ant</b> di-t	<b>di-s</b> di-s	<b>di-s</b>	<b>di-rai</b>	<b>di-s-e</b> di-s-es	<b>Redire, to say again</b> <i>The following compounds make dises in Present Indic.:</i>
		di-t			di-s-e	
		di-s-ons			di-s-ions	
		di-t-es			di-siez	
		di-s-ent			di-s-ent	
§ 243. <b>écri-re</b> <i>to write</i>	<b>écri-y-ant</b> écri-t	<b>écri-s</b> écri-t	<b>écri-y-is</b>	<b>écri-rai</b>	<b>écri-v-e</b> écri-v-es	<b>Décrire, to describe</b> <i>Inscrire, to inscribe</i>
		écri-s-ons			écri-v-e	
		écri-v-ez			écri-v-ions	
		écri-v-ent			écri-v-iez	
					écri-v-ent	

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, contd.

Infinitive.	Participle.	Present Indic.	Futurite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 244. Être to be	ét-ant ét-é	suis es est som-mes ét-es sont	f-us	se-rai	soi-s soi-s soi-t soy-ons soy-ez soi-ent	Imperative: sois soyons soyez
§ 245. faire to make, to do	fai-s-ant fai-t	fai-s fai-s fai-t fai-s-ons fai-t-es font	f-is	fai-ral	fa-s-s-e fa-s-s-es fa-s-s-e fa-s-s-ions fa-s-s-ez fa-s-s-ent	Contrefaire, to feign, counterfeit Défaire, to undo Refaire, to do again Satisfaire, to satisfy Se défaire de, to get rid of
§ 246. Joindre to join	join-ant join-t	join-s join-s join-t join-ons join-ez join-ent	join-is	join-d-rai	join-n-e join-n-es join-n-e join-n-ions join-n-ez join-n-ent	Rejoindre, to rejoin &c.
§ 247. Lire to read	li-s-s-ant li-u	li-s li-s li-t li-s-ons li-s-ez li-s-ent	li-us	li-ral	li-s-s-e li-s-s-es li-s-s-e li-s-s-ions li-s-s-ez li-s-s-ent	Écrire, to elect Rédire, to re-elect Relire, to read again

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, contd.

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Preterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 248. <b>maudi-re</b> to curse	<b>maudi-ss-ant</b> <b>maudi-t</b>	<b>maudi-s</b> <b>maudi-t</b>	<b>maudi-is</b>	<b>maudi-rai</b>	<b>maudi-ss-e</b> <b>maudi-ss-es</b> <b>maudi-ss-e</b> <b>maudi-ss-ions</b> <b>maudi-ss-iez</b> <b>maudi-ss-ent</b>	
§ 249. <b>mett-re</b> to put	<b>mett-ant</b> <b>mis</b>	<b>met-s</b> <b>met-s</b> <b>met</b> <b>mett-ons</b> <b>mett-ez</b> <b>mett-ent</b>	<b>m-is</b>	<b>mett-rai</b>	<b>mett-e</b> <b>mett-es</b> <b>mett-e</b> <b>mett-ions</b> <b>mett-iez</b> <b>mett-ent</b>	Admettre, to admit Commettre, to commit Compromettre, to compromise Omettre, to omit Permettre, to permit Sousmettre, to submit Transmettre, to transmit
§ 250. <b>mou-d-re</b> to grind	<b>mou-l-ant</b> <b>mou-l-u</b>	<b>mou-d-s</b> <b>mou-d-s</b> <b>mou-d</b> <b>mou-l-ons</b> <b>mou-l-ez</b> <b>mou-l-ent</b>	<b>mou-l-us</b>	<b>mou-d-rai</b>	<b>mou-l-e</b> <b>mou-l-es</b> <b>mou-l-e</b> <b>mou-l-ions</b> <b>mou-l-iez</b> <b>mou-l-ent</b>	Remoudre, to grind again
§ 251. <b>nai-t-re</b> to be born	<b>nai-ss-ant</b> <b>né</b>		<b>naqu-is</b>	<b>nai-t-rai</b>	<b>nai-ss-e</b> <b>nai-ss-es</b> <b>nai-ss-e</b> <b>nai-ss-ions</b> <b>nai-ss-iez</b> <b>nai-ss-ent</b>	être in compound tenses † before t

FOURTH CONJUGATION, *contd.*

Infinitive.	Participle.	Present Indic.	Futurite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 252. <b>nui-re</b> <i>to harm</i>	nui-s-ant nui	nui-s nui-t nui-s-ons nui-s-ez nui-s-ent	nui-s-is	nui-rai	nui-s-e nui-s-es nui-s-e nui-s-ions nui-s-iez nui-s-ent	Luire, <i>to shine</i> Luire <i>has no past definite</i>
§ 253. <b>parai-ss-ant</b> <i>to appear</i>	parai-ss-ant par-u	parai-s parai-s parai-ss-ons parai-ss-ez parai-ss-ent	par-us	parat-rai	parai-ss-e parai-ss-es parai-ss-e parai-ss-ions parai-ss-iez parai-ss-ent	Apparaître, <i>to appear (suddenly)</i> Comparaire, <i>to appear (in court)</i> Disparaître, <i>to disappear</i> Reparaître, <i>to reappear</i> I before t
§ 254. <b>peign-ant</b> <i>to paint</i>	peign-ant pein-t	pein-s pein-s peint peign-ons peign-ez peign-ent	peign-is	pein-d-rai	peign-e peign-es peign-e peign-ions peign-iez peign-ent	Atteindre, <i>to reach</i> Éteindre, <i>to extinguish</i> Feindre, <i>to feign</i> Restreindre, <i>to restrict</i> Teindre, <i>to dye</i> etc.
§ 255. <b>plai-s-ant</b> <i>to please</i>	plai-s plu	plai-s plai-s plai-t plais-ons plai-s-ez plai-s-ent	pli-us	plai-rai	plai-s-e plai-s-es plai-s-e plai-s-ions plai-s-iez plai-s-ent	Deplaire, <i>to displease</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION, contd.

Infinities.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Preterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 256. <b>prend-re</b> <i>to take</i>	<b>pren-ant</b> pris	prend-s prend-s prend prend-ons prend-ez prend-ent	pr-is	prendrai	<b>pren-n-e</b> pren-n-es pren-n-e pren-ions pren-iez <b>pren-n-ent</b>	Apprendre, to learn. Comprendre, to understand [take Entreprendre, to undertake Reprendre, to resume, to take back Surprendre, to surprise Sourire, to smile
§ 257. <b>ri-re</b> <i>to laugh</i>	<b>ri-ant</b> ri	ri-s ri-s ri-t ri-ons ri-ez ri-ent	r-is	ri-rai	ri-e ri-es ri-e ri-ions ri-ez ri-ent	Connaitre, to know Connaitre, to realize Douter, to doubt Douter, to疑 Savoir, to know Savoir, to know
§ 258. <b>suffi-re</b> <i>to suffice</i>	<b>suffi-s-ant</b> suffi	suffi-s suffi-s suffi-t suffi-s-ons suffi-s-ez suffi-s-ent	suffi-a	suffi-rai	suffi-s-e suffi-s-es suffi-s-e suffi-s-ions suffi-s-iez suffi-s-ent	S'assurer (impersonal), to result Poursuivre, to pursue
§ 259. <b>suiv-re</b> <i>to follow</i>	<b>suiv-ant</b> <b>suiv-i</b>	suis suis suit suiv-ons suiv-ez suiv-ent	suiv-is	suiv-rai	suiv-e suiv-es suiv-e suiv-ions suiv-iez suiv-ent	

FOURTH CONJUGATION, *contd.*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Preterite.	Future.	Present Subj.	Remarks, and verbs similarly conjugated.
§ 260. <b>se tai-re</b> <i>to be silent</i>	<b>se tai-s-ant</b>	me tai-s te tai-s se tai-t nous tai-s-ons vous tai-s-ez se tai-s-ent	me t-us d.c.	me tai-rai	me tai-s-e te tai-s-es se tai-s-e nous tai-s-ions vous tai-s-ez se tai-s-ent	Distraire, <i>to distract</i> Extraire, <i>to extract</i> Soustraire, <i>to subtract</i>
§ 261. <b>trai-re</b> <i>to milk</i>	<b>tray-ant</b> <b>trait</b>	trai-s trai-s trai-t tray-ons tray-ez trai-ent	—	trai-rai	trai-e trai-es trai-e tray-ons tray-iez trai-ent	Convaincre, <i>to convince</i>
§ 262. <b>vainqu-re</b> <i>to conquer</i>	<b>vainqu-ant</b> <b>vaincu</b>	vainc-s vainc-s vainc vainqu-ons vainqu-ez vainqu-ent	vainqu-is	vainc-rai	vainqu-e vainqu-es vainqu-e vainqu-ions vainqu-iez vainqu-ent	Survivre, <i>to survive</i>
§ 263. <b>viv-re</b> <i>to live</i>	<b>viv-ant</b> <b>véc-u</b>	vi-s vi-s vi-t viv-ons viv-ez viv-ent	véc-us	viv-rai	viv-e viv-es viv-e viv-ons viv-ez viv-ent	

# VOCABULARY.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<b>m.</b>	= masculine	<b>adv.</b>	= adverb
<b>f.</b>	= feminine	<b>dem.</b>	= demonstrative
<b>s.</b>	= substantive	<b>rel.</b>	= relative
<b>adj.</b>	= adjective	<b>conj.</b>	= conjunction
<b>ir.</b>	= irregular	<b>prep.</b>	= preposition
<b>sing.</b>	= singular	<b>disj.</b>	= disjunctive
<b>pl.</b>	= plural	<b>pers.</b>	= personal
<b>v.</b>	= verb	<b>poss.</b>	= possessive
<b>pron.</b>	= pronoun		

N.B.—When a verb is irregular, it is marked "*ir.*" and the § in the Grammar at which it is to be found is indicated.

## A

<b>a</b> , un ( <i>f.</i> une); par, le, la ( <i>see §§ 9 &amp; 10</i> )	<b>age</b> , âge, <i>m.</i> <i>how old are you?</i> quel âge avez-vous?
<b>abolish</b> , abolir	<b>of age</b> , majeur
<b>about</b> , ( <i>nearly</i> ) environ, ( <i>with time of day</i> ) vers	<b>agent</b> , agent, <i>m.</i>
<b>abridge</b> , abréger ( <i>§147</i> )	<b>ago</b> , il y a ( <i>§ 60</i> )
<b>abroad</b> , à l'étranger	<b>agree</b> ( <i>with someone</i> ), s'entendre, s'accorder
<b>absence</b> , absence, <i>f.</i>	<b>agreement</b> , ( <i>document</i> ) contrat, air, air, <i>m.</i> [m.]
<b>accept</b> , accepter	<i>in the open air</i> , en plein air
<b>accompany</b> , accompagner	<b>alike</b> , pareil, semblable
<b>accuse</b> , accuser	<b>alive</b> , vivant
<b>act</b> , <i>s.</i> , acte, <i>m.</i>	<b>all</b> , tout ( <i>pl.</i> tous)
<b>act</b> , <i>v.</i> , agir	<b>along</b> , le long de
<b>actor</b> , acteur, <i>m.</i>	<b>also</b> , aussi
<b>actress</b> , actrice, <i>f.</i>	<b>alteration</b> , changement, <i>m.</i>
<b>acute</b> , aigu ( <i>f.</i> aiguë)	<b>although</b> , quoique ( <i>governs Subjunctive</i> )
<b>admiral</b> , amiral, <i>m.</i>	<b>always</b> , toujours
<b>admire</b> , admirer	<b>a.m.</b> , <i>m.</i> (matin)
<b>advance</b> ( <i>in</i> ), d'avance	<b>ambition</b> , ambition, <i>f.</i>
<b>advice</b> , avis, conseil, <i>m.</i>	<b>America</b> , Amérique, <i>f.</i>
<b>afraid</b> (to be), craindre, <i>ir.</i> ( <i> §§ 238 &amp; 138, Note 2</i> ), avoir peur ( <i>§138, Note 2</i> )	<b>American</b> , <i>s.</i> Américain; ( <i>adj.</i> ) américain
<b>after</b> , après, ( <i>with verb</i> ) après que	<b>amount</b> , <i>s.</i> , montant, <i>m.</i> ; somme,
<b>afternoon</b> , après-midi, <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	<b>amuse</b> , amuser [f.]
<b>against</b> , contre	<b>amuse oneself</b> , s'amuser
	<b>amusing</b> , amusant

- ancestor**, grand-père, aïeul, *m.*  
 (*see § 20*)
- and**, et
- animal**, animal, *m.*
- another**, un (une) autre
- answer**, *s.*, réponse,
- answer**, *v.*, répondre
- anxious**, inquiet (*f.* inquiète)
- any**, du, de la, de l', des; en  
 (*pron.*)
- anybody**, quelqu'un
- applaud**, applaudir
- apple**, pomme, *f.*
- apply**, s'adresser
- appoint**, nommer
- approach**, *v.* s'approcher
- arm**, (*limb*) bras, *m.*; (*weapon*)  
 arme, *f.*
- armchair**, fauteuil, *m.*
- arrive**, arriver (*§ 128*)
- artist**, artiste, *m.* & *f.*
- as**, comme  
*as...as*, aussi...que
- ashamed** (to be), avoir honte
- Asia**, Asie, *f.*
- ask**, demander (*dative of the person*)
- assure**, assurer
- astonished**, étonné, surpris
- at**, à
- attentively**, attentivement
- audience**, (*spectators*) auditoire,
- aunt**, tante, *f.* [m.]
- author**, auteur, *m.*
- autumn**, automne, *m.*
- away**, (*absent*) absent
- be**, être (*p. 60*)  
 to be *to*, avoir à, devoir, *ir*  
 (*§§ 220 & 169*)
- beard**, barbe, *f.*
- beautiful**, beau, bel before  
 vowel or *h* mute, (*f.* belle)
- because**, parce que, car
- bed**, lit, *m.*  
 to go to bed, se coucher
- bedroom**, chambre (à coucher), *f.*
- bee**, abeille, *f.*
- beef**, bœuf, *m.*
- beer**, bière, *f.*
- before**, (of place) devant, (of time), avant
- begin** (to), commencer (à) (*§ 147*),  
 se mettre (à) (*§ 249*)
- believe**, penser, croire, *ir.* (*§ 239*)
- benefactor**, bienfaiteur, *m.*
- best**, *adj.*, le meilleur
- best**, *adv.*, le mieux
- betray**, trahir
- better**, *adj.*, meilleur
- better**, *adv.*, mieux  
*it is better to*, il vaut mieux  
 (*§ 139*)
- bicycle**, bicyclette, *f.*
- big**, gros, grand
- bird**, oiseau, *m.*
- bite**, *v.*, mordre
- black**, noir
- blame**, *v.*, blâmer
- blind**, *adj.*, aveugle
- blindly**, aveuglément
- blue**, bleu (*§ 16, Note*)
- boat**, bateau, *m.*
- bolt**, verrou, *m.*
- book**, livre, *m.*
- boot**, soulier, *m.*
- bootmaker**, cordonnier, *m.*
- born** (to be), naître, *ir.* (*§ 251*)
- bottle**, *s.*, bouteille, *f.*
- bow to**, *v.*, saluer
- boy**, garçon, enfant, *m.*
- branch**, branche, *f.*
- brave**, brave
- bread**, pain, *m.*

**B**

- back**, *adv.* de retour  
 to be back, être de retour
- bad**, *adj.*, mauvais
- badly**, mal
- bag**, sac, *m.*
- ball**, (*dance*) bal, *m.*
- bathe**, *v.*, se baigner

- break**, v., casser, briser  
**breakfast**, s., déjeuner, *m.*  
**breakfast**, v., déjeuner  
**bridge**, pont, *m.*  
**briefly**, brièvement  
**bring**, apporter  
**broad**, large  
**brother**, frère, *m.*  
**brother-in-law**, beau-frère, *m.*  
**Brussels**, Bruxelles, *m.*  
**build**, bâtrir, construire, *ir.* (§ 234)  
**building**, s., bâtiment, *m.*  
**bury**, ensevelir, enterrer  
**business**, les affaires, *f. pl.*  
**but**, mais; (*only*) ne...que  
**buy**, acheter (§ 148, *Excep.*)  
**by**, par; sur (*dimensions*, § 58);  
 en (§ 190)
- cheap**, bon marché (*invariable*)  
**cheaper**, meilleur marché (*invariable*)  
**cheese**, fromage, *m.*  
**cherry**, cerise, *f.*  
**child**, enfant, *m. & f.*  
**chocolate**, chocolat, *m.*  
**choose**, choisir  
**church**, église, *f.*  
**city**, ville, *f.*  
**clean**, *adj.*, propre  
**clean**, v., nettoyer (§ 151)  
**clear away**, v., desservir, *ir.*  
 (§ 213)
- clerk**, clerc, employé, *m.*  
**clever**, habile  
**clock**, (*apartment*) pendule, *f.*;  
 (*turret-clock*), horloge, *f.*
- client**, client, *m.*  
**close**, fermer  
**clothes**, habits, *m. pl.*  
**club**, club, *m.*  
**clumsiness**, maladresse, *f.*  
**coast**, côte, *f.*  
**coffee**, café, *m.*  
**cold**, *adj.*, froid  
*I am cold*, j'ai froid (§ 152)  
*it is cold*, il fait froid (§ 145)  
*to have a cold*, être enrhumé
- colleague**, collègue, *m.*  
**collect** ((*rates*)), percevoir  
**collection**, collection, *f.*  
**colonel**, colonel, *m.*  
**colour**, s., couleur, *f.*  
**come**, venir, *ir.* (§§ 216 & 128)  
*come down*, descendre  
*come home*, rentrer (§ 128)  
*come in*, entrer (§ 128)  
*come up*, monter
- companion**, compagnon, *m.*  
**compel**, forcer (§ 147), obliger  
 (§ 147)  
**complete**, complet (*f. complète*)  
**conceive**, concevoir  
**concert**, concert, *m.*  
**concrete**, *adj.*, concret (*f. concrète*)

**C**

- cabbage**, chou, *m.*  
**call**, v., appeler (§ 148); (*visit*)  
 passer, visiter  
**calm**, *adj.*, calme  
**can**, v., pouvoir, *ir.* (§ 224);  
 savoir, *ir.* (§§ 226 & 173)  
**canal**, canal, *m.*  
**captain**, capitaine, *m.*  
**carefully**, soigneusement  
**carnival**, carnaval, *m.*  
**carpet**, tapis, *m.*  
**carriage**, voiture, *f.*  
**carry**, porter  
**castle**, château, *m.*  
**catch**, attraper  
*catch cold*, s'enrhumer  
**cause**, v., causer  
**cautiously**, prudemment  
**cease**, cesser  
**cellar**, cave, *f.*  
**centime**, centime, *m.*  
**certain**, certain  
**chair**, chaise, *f.*  
**change (money)**, monnaie, *f.*  
**change**, v., changer  
**Charles**, Charles

**conduct**, *s.*, conduite, *f.*  
**consent**, *s.*, consentement, *m.*  
**consent**, *v.*, consentir  
**consist** (*in*), se composer (*de*)  
**contribute**, contribuer  
**convenient**, commode  
**copper**, cuivre, *m.*  
**coral**, corail, *m.*  
**correct**, *v.* corriger (§ 147)  
**correspond**, correspondre  
**correspondence**, correspondance, *f.*  
**cost**, *v.*, coûter  
**could** (*see* § 171)  
**count**, *v.* compter  
**country**, pays, *m.*; (*as opposed to town*) campagne, *f.*  
**countryman**, compatriote, *m.*  
**cousin**, cousin (*f.* cousine)  
**cream**, *s.*, crème, *f.*  
**cross**, *s.*, croix, *f.*  
**cross**, *v.*, traverser  
**cruel**, cruel  
**cure**, *v.*, guérir  
**cut** (*down*), couper

**D**

**dance**, *s.*, bal, *m.*  
**dance**, *v.*, danser  
**dancer**, danseur, *m.*  
**danger**, danger, *m.*  
**dare**, oser  
**daughter**, fille, *f.*  
**day**, jour, *m.*; journée, *f.*  
*every day*, tous les jours  
**dead**, mort  
**deal** (*a great*), beaucoup  
**dear**, cher  
**deceive**, décevoir  
**December**, décembre, *m.*  
**decide**, décider  
**declare**, déclarer  
**deep**, profond  
**defend**, défendre  
**demolish**, démolir

**department**, département, *m.*  
**deputy**, député, *m.*  
**deserve**, mériter  
**destruction**, destruction, *f.*  
**dictionary**, dictionnaire, *m.*  
**die**, mourir, *ir.* (§§ 210 & 128)  
**difficult**, difficile  
**difficulty**, difficulté, *f.*  
**dine**, dîner  
**dining-room**, salle à manger, *f.*  
**dinner**, dîner, *m.*  
**director**, directeur, *m.*  
**disappoint**, désappointer  
**disaster**, désastre, *m.*  
**discreet**, discret (*f.* discrète)  
**disposed**, disposé  
**divide**, diviser  
**do**, faire, *ir.* (§ 245)  
**doctor**, médecin, *m.*  
*Doctor X.*, le docteur X.  
**dog**, chien, *m.*  
**door**, porte, *f.*  
**doubt**, *v.*, douter  
**dozen**, douzaine, *f.* (§ 59)  
**drawing-room**, salon, *m.*  
**dress**, *s.*, robe, *f.*  
**dry**, sec (*f.* sèche)  
**duchess**, duchesse, *f.*  
**duke**, duc, *m.*  
**dumb**, muet  
**during**, pendant  
**duty**, devoir, *m.*

**E**

**each**, *adj.*, chaque, tous les (*f.* toutes les)  
**each**, *pron.*, chacun (*f.* chacune)  
**each other**, l'un l'autre  
**earlier**, de meilleure heure  
**early**, de bonne heure  
**earth**, terre, *f.*  
**easy**, facile  
**eat**, manger (§ 147)  
**Edward**, Édouard  
**effect**, *v.*, commettre, *ir.* (§ 249)

**effort**, effort, *m.*  
**egg**, œuf, *m.*  
**eight**, huit  
**eighty**, quatre-vingts  
**either**, *indefinite adj. and pron.*,  
 l'un ou l'autre  
**elder**, **eldest**, ainé (*f. ainée*)  
**elephant**, éléphant, *m.*  
**eleven**, onze (*§ 1, N.B.*)  
**eleventh**, onzième (*§ 1, N.B.*)  
**emigrant**, émigrant, *m.*  
**emperor**, empereur, *m.*  
**empress**, impératrice, *f.*  
**enamel**, émail, *m.*  
**end**, *s.*, fin, *f.*; bout, *m.*  
**endeavour**, *v.*, essayer (*§ 151, N.B.*)  
**enemy**, ennemi, *m.*  
**engineer**, ingénieur, *m.*  
**England**, Angleterre, *f.*  
**English**, *adj.*, anglais; *s.*, Anglais  
**Englishman**, Anglais  
**enjoy** (oneself), s'amuser  
**enormously**, énormément  
**enough**, assez  
**enter**, entrer  
**envelope**, enveloppe, *f.*  
**escape**, *v.*, échapper; (*to run away*) s'échapper  
**establish**, établir  
**estate**, propriété, *f.*  
**Europe**, Europe, *f.*  
**European**, européen  
**evening**, soir, *m.*; soirée, *f.*  
**ever**, jamais  
**every**, *adj.*, chaque, tous (toutes) les (*§ 104, Note*)  
**everybody**, tout le monde  
**everyone**, chacun, tout le monde  
**everywhere**, partout  
**examine**, examiner  
**exist**, exister  
**explain**, expliquer  
**eye**, œil (*§ 20*), *m.*  
**exhibition**, exposition, *f.*  
**expect**, attendre

**experienced**, expérimenté  
**explanation**, explication, *f.*  
**expose** (oneself), s'exposer  
**extraordinary**, extraordinaire

**F**

**factory**, usine, fabrique, *f.*  
**fair**, *adj.*, blond  
**faithful**, fidèle  
**fall**, *v.*, tomber (*§ 128*)  
**false**, faux (*f. fausse*)  
**family**, famille, *f.*  
**fat**, *adj.*, gras (*f. grasse*)  
**father**, père, *m.*  
**favourite**, favori (*f. favorite*)  
**festival**, festival, *m.*  
**fetch**, *v.*, aller chercher  
**few**, peu  
 a few, quelques (*adj.*); quelques-uns (*pron.*)  
**field**, champ, *m.*  
**fierce**, féroce  
**fifth**, cinquième  
**fifty**, cinquante  
**fill**, remplir  
**find**, *v.*, trouver  
**fine**, *adj.*, beau, joli  
 it is fine (*weather*), il fait beau (temps)  
**finish**, *v.*, finir (*p. 62*)  
**fire**, *s.*, feu, *m.*  
**firm**, *s.*, maison, *f.*  
**first**, *numeral adj.*, premier  
**fish**, *s.*, poisson, *m.*  
**fish**, *v.*, pêcher  
**fishing**, *s.*, pêche, *f.*  
**five**, cinq  
**fleet**, flotte, *f.*  
**flower**, *s.*, fleur, *f.*  
**fluently**, couramment  
**fly away**, s'envoler  
**fog**, *s.*, brouillard, *m.*  
**folding-door**, vantail, *m.*  
**fond of** (to be), aimer  
**food**, nourriture, *f.*

- foolish**, sot, fou  
**for**, pour (*prep.*); pendant (*of time*)  
**forbid**, défendre  
**forehead**, front, *m.*  
**foreign**, étranger  
**foreigner**, étranger, *m.*  
**forest**, forêt, *f.*  
**forget**, oublier  
**forgive**, pardonner  
**fork**, fourchette, *f.*  
**fortnight**, quinzaine, *f.*; quinze jours (*§ 59*)  
**forty**, quarante  
**four**, quatre  
**franc**, *s.*, franc, *m.*  
**France**, France, *f.*  
**freeze**, geler (*§ 148, Excep.*)  
**French**, *adj.*, français; *s.*, Français  
**fresh**, frais (*f. fraîche*)  
**friend**, ami, *m.*  
**frightened** (to be), avoir peur  
**from**, de, de la part de (*on behalf of*)  
**frontier**, frontière, *f.*  
**fruit**, fruit, *m.*  
**fruit-tree**, arbre fruitier, *m.*  
**full**, plein  
**furniture**, meubles, *m.pl.*; ameublement, *m.*  
**future** (in), à l'avenir
- G**
- gain**, *v.*, gagner  
**garden**, jardin, *m.*  
**gardener**, jardinier, *m.*  
**general**, *adj.* & *s.*, général  
**Geneva**, Genève, *m.*  
**gentle**, doux  
**gentleman**, monsieur (*§ 20*)  
**George**, George  
**German**, *adj.*, allemand; *s.*, Allemand  
**Germany**, Allemagne, *f.*  
**get**, (*arrive*) arriver (*§ 128*)
- get up**, se lever (*§ 149*)  
**girl**, fille, *f.*  
**give**, donner  
**give back**, rendre  
**glass**, verre, *m.*  
**glorious** (*of weather*), superbe  
**go**, aller, *ir.* (*§§ 199 & 128*)  
*go back*, retourner (*§ 128*), revenir (*§§ 216 & 128*)  
*go down*, descendre  
*go home*, rentrer (*§ 128*)  
*go out*, sortir, *ir.* (*§§ 214 & 128*)  
*go up*, monter
- gold**, or, *m.*  
**good**, bon (*f. bonne*)  
**government**, gouvernement, *m.* sing.  
**governess**, gouvernante, *f.*  
**grandfather**, grand-père, aïeul (*§ 20*), *m.*  
**grape**, raisin, *m.*  
**grass**, herbe, *f.*  
**great**, grand  
**Greek**, grec  
**green**, vert  
**grow rich**, s'enrichir  
**guarantee**, garantir  
**guard**, *s.*, (*man*) garde, *m.*  
**guess**, *v.*, deviner  
**guest**, invité
- H**
- hail**, *s.*, grêle, *f.*  
**hail**, *v.*, grêler  
**hair**, (*head of hair*) cheveux, *m.pl.*  
**half**, *adj.*, demi  
**halfpenny**, sou, *m.*  
**hand**, main, *f.*  
**handkerchief**, mouchoir, *m.*  
**handsome**, beau, joli  
**happen**, arriver (*§ 128*); venir à (*§ 174, N.B.*)  
**happy**, heureux  
**harbour**, port, *m.*  
**hard**, dur

- haste** (to make), se hâter  
**hat**, chapeau, *m.*  
**hate**, *v.*, hair. *Indic. Pres.:* je  
 hais, tu hais, il hait, *otherwise regular*  
**hatred**, haine (*h aspirate*), *f.*  
**have**, avoir (*p. 60*)  
**have to**, avoir à, devoir, *ir.*  
 (§§ 169 & 220)  
**he**, il, lui (*disj.*)  
**head**, tête, *f.*  
**headmaster**, directeur, *m.*  
**headmistress**, directrice, *f.*  
**hear**, entendre  
*hear from someone*, avoir des  
 nouvelles de quelqu'un  
**Heaven**, ciel (§ 20), *m.*  
**heavily** (*of rain*), à verse  
**hen**, poule, *f.*  
**Henry**, Henri  
**her**, *pers. pron.*, la, l'; elle (*disj.*)  
**her**, *poss. adj.*, son, sa, ses  
**here**, ici  
*here is (are)*, voici  
*here he is*, le voici  
**herring**, hareng, *m.* (*h aspirate*)  
**hers**, le sien, la sienne, les siens,  
 les siennes  
**hesitate**, hésiter  
**high**, haut (*h aspirate*)  
*upstairs*, en haut  
**him**, le, l'; lui (*disj.*)  
**his**, *adj.*, son, sa, ses  
**his**, *pron.*, le sien, la sienne, les  
 siens, les siennes  
*a friend of his*, un de ses amis  
**holidays**, vacances, *f. pl.*  
**home** (*at*), à la maison  
**hook** (*fishing-*), hameçon (*h aspirate*), *m.*  
**horse**, cheval, *m.*  
**hospital**, hôpital, *m.*  
**hot**, chaud  
*I am hot*, j'ai chaud (§ 152)  
*it is hot*, il fait chaud (§ 145)  
**hotel**, hôtel, *m.*  
**hour**, heure, *f.*  
*half an hour*, une demi-heure  
*an hour and a half*, une heure  
 et demie  
*a quarter of an hour*, un quart  
 d'heure  
**house**, maison, *f.*  
*at (or to) the house of*, chez  
**how**, comment  
**how much** (*or many*), combien  
**hundred**, cent  
*hundreds of*, des centaines de  
**hungry** (*to be*), avoir faim  
**hurt**, *v.*, faire (§ 245) mal  
**husband**, époux, mari, *m.*

**I**

- I**, je, moi (*disj.*)  
**ice**, glace, *f.*  
**if**, si (*s' before il*, *Introd. III.*)  
**ill**, *adj.*, malade  
**illness**, maladie, *f.*  
**imperial**, impérial  
**important**, important  
**in**, dans, en, à (§ 191)  
**incident**, incident, *m.*  
**inclined** (*to feel*), avoir envie (*de*)  
**industrious**, laborieux  
**influence**, *s.*, influence, *f.*  
**inhabitant**, habitant, *m.*  
**ink**, encre, *f.*  
**inkstand**, encrier, *m.*  
**insist**, insister  
**inspector**, inspecteur, *m.*  
**inst.**, *c<sup>t</sup>* (*courant*)  
**interesting**, intéressant  
**interval**, intervalle, *m.*  
**interview**, entrevue, *f.*  
**into**, dans, en  
**introduce**, présenter  
**invent**, inventer  
**invite**, inviter  
**Ireland**, Irlande, *f.*  
**Irish**, irlandais  
**island**, île, *f.*  
**it**, *dem. pron.*, ce, *c'*  
**it**, *pers. pron.*, (*subject*) il, elle :  
 (*object*) le, la, l'

**J**

- jackal**, chacal, *m.*  
**January**, janvier, *m.*  
**Japanese**, *adj.*, japonais; *s., Japonais, m.*  
**jewel**, bijou, *m.*  
**journey**, *s.*, voyage, *m.*  
**jury**, jury, *m.*  
**just** (to have), venir de, *ir.* (§ 216)  
*just as*, au moment où

**K**

- kill**, tuer  
**kilometer**, kilomètre, *m.*  
**kind**, *adj.*, aimable, gentil  
*be kind enough to*, veuillez  
 (§ 228)  
**kind**, *s.*, espèce, *f.*  
**king**, roi, *m.*  
**knee**, genou, *m.*  
**knife**, couteau, *m.*  
**know**, (to be acquainted with)  
 connaître, *ir.* (§ 236); (to be  
 aware of or to know by  
 heart) savoir, *ir.* (§ 226)  
 know how to, savoir (§§ 226 &  
 173)

**L**

- lady**, dame, *f.*  
*young lady*, demoiselle, *f.*  
**landau**, landau, *m.* (§ 16, Note)  
**language**, langue, *f.*  
**large**, grand, gros (*bulky*)  
**last**, *adj.*, dernier  
*last week*, la semaine dernière  
*last month*, le mois dernier  
*last year*, l'année dernière  
**late**, tard, en retard  
*I am late*, je suis en retard  
*it is getting late*, il se fait tard  
*it is late*, il est tard  
**laugh** (at), se moquer (de), rire  
 (de), *ir.* (§ 257)  
**lawn-tennis**, lawn-tennis, *m.*  
**lean**, *v.*, s'appuyer (§ 151)

- learn**, apprendre, *ir.* (§ 256)  
**lease**, bail, *m.*  
**least**, moindre  
*at least*, au moins  
**leave**, *v.*, (*something*) laisser;  
 (*a place*) quitter; (*depart*)  
 partir, *ir.* (§ 211)  
**left**, *adj.*, gauche  
**lend**, prêter  
**length**, longueur, *f.*  
**less**, moins  
**let**, (*hire*) louer  
**letter**, lettre, *f.*  
**library**, bibliothèque, *f.*  
**line**, *s.*, ligne, *f.*  
**lightning**, foudre, *f.*  
*a flash of lightning*, éclair, *m.*  
**like**, *v.*, aimer  
**like**, *adv.*, comme  
**listen**, écouter  
**litre**, litre, *m.*  
**little**, *adj.*, petit  
*a little*, *adv.*, un peu  
**live**, (*dwell*) habiter; (*to be alive*)  
 vivre, *ir.* (§ 263)  
**lock**, *v.*, fermer à clef  
**lodging**, gîte, *m.*  
**London**, Londres, *m.*  
**long**, *adj.*, long (*f. longue*)  
**long**, *adv.*, longtemps  
**longing to** (I am), il me tarde de  
**look at**, regarder  
**look for**, chercher  
**lose**, perdre  
**love**, *v.*, aimer, chérir  
**love**, *s.*, amour, *m.*  
**low**, bas  
**luggage**, les bagages, *m.pl.*  
**lunch**, *s.*, déjeuner, *m.*  
*to have lunch*, déjeuner

**M**

- machine**, machine, *f.*  
**mad**, *adj.*, fou (*f. folle*)  
**madman**, fou, *m.*  
**Madam**, madame (§ 20)

- make**, faire (§ 245)  
**man**, homme, *m.*  
**manage**, (*administrate*) gérer  
     (§ 150)  
**manager**, directeur, gérant, *m.*  
**mantel-piece**, cheminée, *f.*  
**many**, beaucoup (§ 36, *N.B.*),  
     bien (§ 178, *N.B.*)  
**marry**, (*wed*) épouser; (*to get married*) se marier  
**Marseilles**, Marseille, *m.*  
**master**, maître, *m.*  
**May**, *s.*, mai, *m.*  
**mayor**, maire, *m.*  
**me**, me, moi  
**meat**, viande, *f.*  
**meet**, rencontrer  
     *to go and meet*, aller au-devant  
     de  
**melt**, fondre  
**member**, membre, *m.*  
**merchant**, commerçant, *m.*  
**metre**, mètre, *m.*  
**midnight**, minuit  
**might**, *v.* (*see* § 171)  
**mile**, mille, *m.*  
**milk**, lait, *m.*  
**million**, million, *m.*  
**mine**, *poss. pron.*, le mien, la  
     mienne, les miens, les miennes  
     *a friend of mine*, un de mes  
     amis  
**mine**, *s.*, mine, *f.*  
**miner**, mineur, *m.*  
**minute**, minute, *f.*  
**misprint**, *s.*, faute d'impression  
**Miss**, mademoiselle (§ 20)    [*f.*]  
**miss**, *v.*, manquer  
**mistake**, erreur, faute, *f.*  
**money**, argent, *m.*  
**month**, mois, *m.*  
**monthly**, *adj.*, mensuel; *adv.*,  
     mensuellement  
**moon**, lune, *f.*  
**more**, plus  
     *no...more (not...any more)*,  
     *ne...plus*  
     *the more...the more*, plus...  
     plus  
**morning**, matin, *m.*; matinée, *f.*  
**most**, plus, très; (*most part*) la  
     plupart  
**mother**, mère, *f.*  
**motor-car**, automobile, *f.*  
**mourning**, deuil, *m.*  
**move**, *v.*, bouger, mouvoir, *ir.*  
     (§ 222)  
**Mr.**, monsieur (§ 20)  
     *Mr. So-and-so*, Monsieur un tel  
**Mrs.**, madame (§ 20)  
     *Mrs. So-and-so*, Madame une  
     telle  
**much**, beaucoup (§ 36, *N.B.*), bien  
     *as much*, autant  
     *so much*, tant  
     *too much*, trop  
**must**, devoir (§ 220), falloir (§ 221)  
**mutton**, mouton, *m.*  
**my**, mon, ma, mes

**N**

- nail**, *s.*, clou, *m.*  
**name**, *s.*, nom, *m.*  
**narrow**, étroit  
**nation**, nation, *f.*  
**neighbour**, voisin, *m.*  
**neighbourhood**, voisinage, *m.*  
**neither**, *indef. adj.* & *pron.*, ni  
     l'un ni l'autre  
**nephew**, neveu, *m.*  
**never**, jamais; ne...jamais (*with verb*)  
**new**, neuf (*f.* neuve), nouveau  
     [§ 23, (7)]  
**newspaper**, journal, *m.*  
**next**, suivant, prochain  
     *next week*, la semaine prochaine  
     *next year*, l'année prochaine  
**nice**, joli, gentil  
**niece**, nièce, *f.*  
**night**, nuit, *f.*  
     *last night*, hier soir  
**nil**, nul, *adj.*  
**nine**, neuf

**nineteen**, dix-neuf

**no, adv.**, non

**no, indef. adj. or pron.**, aucun, nul

**no one**, personne (*ne with verb*)

**nobody**, personne (*ne with verb*)

**noise**, bruit, *m.*

**nose**, nez, *m.*

**not**, ne...pas, ne...point

**nothing**, rien (*ne with verb*)

**notice**, *v.*, remarquer

**now**, maintenant

**number**, *s.*, (*arithmetic*) nombre, *m.*; (*distinguishing*) numéro, *m.*

O

**obey**, obéir (à)

**oblige**, obliger (§ 147)

**o'clock**, heure, *f.* (*h mute*)

*what o'clock (time) is it?*  
quelle heure est-il?

**offer**, *s.*, offre, *f.*

**offer**, *v.*, offrir, *ir.* (§ 205)

**of**, de

**office**, bureau, *m.*

**officer**, officier, *m.*

**oil**, huile, *f.*

**old**, vieux, âgé, ancien

*how old are you?* quel âge  
avez-vous?

**on**, sur

**one**, un (*f. une*)

**only**, seulement, ne...que (*with the only one*, le seul [verb])

**open**, ouvrir, *ir.* (§ 205)

**opinion**, avis, *m.*; opinion, *f.*

**opportunity**, occasion, *f.*

**orange**, orange, *f.*

**order**, *s.*, ordre, *m.*

**order**, *v.*, ordonner, commander

**other**, autre

**ought**, *v.* (*see § 170*)

**our**, notre (*pl. nos*)

**ours**, le (la) notre (*pl. les nôtres*)

**out** (to be), être sorti

**owl**, hibou, *m.*

P

**page**, page, *f.*

**paper**, papier; (*newspaper*) journal, *m.*

**parcel**, paquet, *m.*

**Parisian**, parisien

**Parliament**, parlement, *m.*

**particular**, *s.*, détail, *m.*

**partner**, associé, *m.*

**party**, (*social*) soirée, *f.*

**pavement**, trottoir, *m.*

**pay**, payer (§ 151, *N.B.*)

**peach**, pêche, *f.*

**pear**, poire, *f.*

**peasant**, paysan, *m.*

**pebble**, caillou, *m.*

**pen**, plume, *f.*

**people**, (*one*) on; les gens, *m.pl.*;  
les personnes, *f.pl.*

**pencil**, crayon, *m.*

**perceive**, apercevoir

**perhaps**, peut-être

**perish**, périr

**permission**, permission, *f.*

**person**, personne, *f.*

**picture**, tableau, *m.*

**play**, *s.*, jeu, *m.*; (*theatre*) pièce, *f.*

**play**, *v.*, jouer (de and à, see  
footnote, p. 69)

**please**, plaître (à), *ir.* (§ 255)

**please** (if you), s'il vous plaît

**pleased**, content, satisfait

**p.m.**, *s.*, (soir)

**pocket**, *s.*, poche, *f.*

**pocket-book**, portefeuille, *m.*

**policeman**, sergent de ville, *m.*

**poor**, pauvre

**populous**, peuplé

**Portugal**, Portugal, *m.*

**position**, position, *f.*

**possess**, posséder (§ 150)

**post**, *v.*, mettre (§ 249) à la poste

**postman**, facteur, *m.*

**pound**, livre, *f.*

**powerful**, puissant

praise, louer  
 precisely, (*of time*) précis(e)  
 prefer, préférer (§ 150)  
 prepare, préparer  
 present, *s.*, cadeau, présent, *m.*  
 presently, tout à l'heure  
 preside, présider  
 pretend, prétendre  
 pretty, beau, joli  
 prince, prince, *m.*  
 princess, princesse, *f.*  
 principal, principal  
 protect, protéger (§ 147)  
 proud, fier  
 provisions, provisions, *f. pl.*  
 prudence, prudence, *f.*  
 public, *adj.*, public  
 pull down, démolir  
 punish, punir  
 pupil, élève, *m. and f.*

**Q**

quality, qualité, *f.*  
 quarrel, *s.*, querelle, *f.*  
 quarrel, *v.*, se quereller  
 quarter, quart, *m.*  
*a quarter of an hour*, un quart d'heure  
 queen, reine, *f.*  
 question, *s.*, question, *f.*  
*it is a question of*, il s'agit de (§ 146)  
 quite, tout, tout à fait, complètement

**R**

racket, raquette, *f.*  
 rain, *s.*, pluie, *f.*  
 rain, *v.*, pleuvoir, *ir.* (§ 228)  
 rare, rare  
 read, lire, *ir.* (§ 247)  
 ready, prêt  
 receive, recevoir (§. 63)  
 recently, récemment  
 red, rouge

reddish, roux (*f.* rousse)  
 reflect, réfléchir  
 refuse, *v.*, refuser  
 regret, *v.*, regretter  
 reign, *s.*, règne, *m.*  
 rejoice (at), se réjouir (de)  
 relate, raconter  
 rely, compter  
 repeat, répéter (§ 150)  
 replace, remplacer (§ 147)  
 reply, *v.*, répondre  
 reply, *s.*, réponse, *f.*  
 reservoir, réservoir, *m.*  
 rest, *v.*, se reposer  
 retire, se retirer  
 return, retourner (§ 128), revenir, *ir.* (§§ 216 & 128)  
 reward, *s.*, récompense, *f.*  
 reward, *v.*, récompenser  
 ribbon, ruban, *m.*  
 rich, riche  
*to grow rich*, s'enrichir  
 ride, *v.*, faire une promenade à bicyclette, à cheval, en automobile (see § 48)

right (to be), avoir raison  
 right, (*opposed to left*) *adj.*, droit  
 ripe, mûr  
 rise, monter  
 river, fleuve, *m.*; rivière, *f.*  
 robbery, vol, *m.*  
 room, chambre, *f.*  
 rose, rose, *f.*  
 rose-tree, rosier, *m.*  
 royal, royal  
 ruin, *v.*, abîmer  
 Russia, Russie, *f.*  
 rusty, rouillé

**S**

sad, triste  
 sail, *s.*, voile, *f.*  
 sail, *v.*, partir, *ir.* (§ 211)  
 sailor, marin, *m.*  
 salt, sel, *m.*

- same** (the), le (or la) même, *pl.*  
les mêmes
- Saturday**, samedi, *m.*
- say**, dire, *ir.* (§ 242)
- scarce**, rare
- scarcely**, à peine (§ 160, *N.B.*)
- scheme**, *s..*, projet, plan, *m.*
- school**, école, *f.*; collège, *m.*
- scissors**, ciseaux, *m.pl.*
- scold**, gronder
- scratch out**, effacer
- sea**, mer, *f.*
- seal**, *v..*, cacheter (§ 148)
- seaside**, le bord de la mer
- seated** (to be), être assis
- second**, second, deuxième (*in compounds*)
- secret**, *adj.*, secret (*f. secrète*)
- see**, apercevoir, voir, *ir.* (§ 228)
- seem**, sembler, paraître, *ir.*  
(§ 253)
- Seine**, Seine, *f.*
- sell**, vendre
- senate**, sénat, *m.*
- send**, envoyer, *ir.* (§§ 151 & 200)  
*send for*, envoyer chercher
- servant**, domestique, *m. and f.*
- settle**, (*in a place*) s'établir
- seven**, sept
- seventy**, soixante-dix
- several**, plusieurs
- shade**, ombre, *f.*
- share**, *s..*, action, *f.*; (*part*) part,  
portion, *f.*
- sharp**, pointu, aigu (*f. aiguë*)
- she**, elle
- sheet**, (*of paper*) feuille, *f.*
- ship**, vaisseau, navire, *m.*
- shop**, magasin, *m.*
- shopkeeper**, marchand, *m.*
- short**, court
- show**, *v..*, montrer
- shudder**, frémir
- sight of** (to lose), perdre de vue
- silent**, silencieux
- silent** (to be), se taire, *ir.* (§ 260)
- silver**, argent, *m.*
- similar**, pareil, semblable
- sing**, chanter
- singer**, chanteur, *m.*
- sir**, monsieur (*pl. messieurs*)
- sister**, sœur, *f.*
- sit down**, s'asseoir, *ir.* (§ 219)
- six**, six
- skate**, *s..*, patin, *m.*
- skate**, *v..*, patiner
- sky**, ciel (*pl. cieux and ciels, see § 20*), *m.*
- sleep**, *v..*, dormir, *ir.* (§ 207)
- slightest**, le (or la) moindre (*pl. les moindres*)
- slipper**, pantoufle, *f.*
- slowly**, lentement
- small**, petit
- snow**, *s..*, neige, *f.*
- snow**, *v..*, neiger (§ 147)
- so**, si, aussi  
*not so...as*, pas si...que
- soldier**, soldat, *m.*
- solicitor**, avoué, *m.*
- some**, *indef. adj.*, quelques
- some**, *indef. pron.*, quelques-uns (*f. quelques-unes*)
- some**, *partitive article*, du, de la, de l', des
- some**, *pers. pron. (of it, of them)*, en
- something**, quelque chose  
*something else*, autre chose
- sometimes**, quelquefois
- son**, fils, *m.*
- soon**, bientôt  
*as soon as*, aussitôt que, dèsque
- sorry**, fâché
- so that**, de sorte que, afin que
- soul**, âme, *f.*
- south**, sud, *m.*
- sovereign**, souverain, *m.*
- Spain**, Espagne, *f.*
- Spanish**, *adj.*, espagnol; *s..*  
Espagnol, *m.*
- speak**, parler
- speech**, discours, *m.*

- spell**, épeler (§ 148)
- spend**, (*money*) dépenser; (*time*)  
passer
- spite of** (in), malgré
- spoon**, cuiller (*or cuillère*), *f.*
- spot**, *s.*, endroit, lieu, *m.*
- spring**, printemps, *m.* [m.]
- stained-glass window**, vitrail,
- stair(-case)**, escalier, *m.*
- star**, étoile, *f.*
- start**, *v.*, partir, *ir.* (§ 128)
- station**, gare, *f.*
- stay**, *v.*, rester (§ 128)
- steamboat**, bateau à vapeur, *m.*
- steamer**, bateau à vapeur,  
steamer, *m.*
- sterling**, sterling
- stick** (walking), canne, *f.*
- still**, *adv.*, encore
- stop**, *v.*, arrêter (*transitive*),  
s'arrêter (*intransitive*)
- story**, histoire, *f.*
- stout**, *adj.*, gros (*f. grosse*)
- straightforward**, franc (*f.*  
franche)
- stranger**, étranger, *m.*
- strawberry**, fraise, *f.*
- straw hat**, chapeau de paille, *m.*
- street**, rue, *f.*
- strength**, force, *f.*
- strong**, fort
- study**, *v.*, étudier
- stupid**, sot (*f. sotte*)
- subject**, *adj.*, sujet (*f. sujette*)
- succeed**, (*to be successful*) réussir; (*to take the place of*)  
succéder à) (§ 150)
- success**, succès, *m.*
- such**, tel, telle  
*such a*, un tel, un si (*see § 102*)
- suddenly**, tout à coup
- sugar**, sucre, *m.*
- summer**, été, *m.*  
*in (the) summer*, en été
- sun**, soleil, *m.*
- Sunday**, dimanche, *m.*
- sunshade**, ombrelle, *f.*
- superior**, supérieur
- supply**, *v.*, fournir
- suppose**, supposer
- sure**, sûr
- surprise**, *s.*, surprise, *f.*
- surprise**, *v.*, surprendre, *ir.*  
(§ 256)
- sweet**, doux (*f. douce*)
- swim**, *v.*, nager (§ 147)
- Switzerland**, Suisse, *f.*
- T**
- table**, table, *f.*
- take**, prendre, *ir.* (§ 256)
- take off**, enlever (§ 149)
- take out**, tirer
- tall**, grand, haut, gros
- taste**, *v.*, goûter
- tea**, thé, *m.*
- tease**, *v.*, taquiner
- telegram**, dépeche, *f.*; télégramme, *m.*
- tell**, raconter, dire, *ir.* (§ 242)
- ten**, dix
- terms**, (*conditions*) conditions,  
*f.pl.*
- Thames**, Tamise, *f.*
- than**, que, de
- thank**, *v.*, remercier
- thank you**, merci
- that**, *adj.*, ce, cet, cette
- that**, *conj.*, que
- that**, *pron.*, cela, ce; (*the one*)  
celui (*f. celle*)
- that** (one), *pron.*, celui-là (*f.*  
celle-là)
- the**, le, la, l', les
- theatre**, théâtre, *m.*
- their**, leur
- theirs**, le (*or la*) leur (*pl. les*  
leurs)
- them**, les: *disj.* eux (*f. elles*)
- themselves**, eux-mêmes (*f. elles*  
mêmes)
- then**, alors
- the one**, celui (*f. celle*)

- there**, là, y  
*there is (are)*, il y a (§ 144,  
*N.B.*); (*when pointing to*)  
 voilà  
*there he is*, le voilà
- these**, *adj.*, ces  
**these**, *pron.*, ceux-ci (*f.* celles-ci)  
**they**, ils (*f.* elles); (*disj.*) eux (*f.*  
 elles); (*people*) on
- thick**, épais (*f.* épaisse)  
**thin**, *adj.*, mince  
**thing**, chose, *f.*  
**think** (*of*), penser (à), croire, *ir.*  
 (§ 239)  
**thirsty** (*to be*), avoir soif  
**thirty**, trente  
**thirty-one**, trente et un  
**this**, *adj.*, ce, cet (*f.* cette)  
**this**, *pron.*, ceci  
**this** (*one*), celui-ci (*f.* celle-ci)  
**thousand**, mille, mil (§ 49)  
*thousands of*, des milliers de  
**three**, trois  
**thrifty**, économique  
**those**, *adj.*, ces  
**those**, *pron.*, ceux-là (*f.* celles-là)  
**threaten**, menacer (§ 147)  
**thunderstorm**, orage, *m.*  
**Thursday**, jeudi, *m.*  
**thus**, ainsi  
**ticket**, *s.*, billet, *m.*  
**tide**, *s.*, marée, *f.*  
**time**, temps, *m.*; (*hour*) heure, *f.*,  
 (*number of times*) fois, *f.*  
*it is time*, il est temps
- tired**, fatigué, las (*f.* lasse)  
**to**, à, en (§ 191)  
**to-day**, aujourd'hui  
**to-morrow**, demain  
**to-night**, ce soir  
**too**, trop; (*also*) aussi  
**too much**, trop  
**towards**, vers, envers (*see § 183.*  
*N.B.*)  
**towel**, serviette, *f.*  
**town**, ville, *f.*
- toy**, joujou, *m.*  
**trace**, *s.*, trace, *f.*  
**tradesman**, marchand, *m.*  
**train**, *s.*, train, *m.*  
**treat**, *s.*, régale, *m.*  
**tree**, arbre, *m.*  
**trouble**, *s.*, peine, *f.*  
**try**, essayer (§ 151)  
**Tuesday**, mardi, *m.*  
**Turkish**, turc  
**twelfth**, douzième  
**twelve**, douze  
*twelve o'clock*, midi (*mid-day*),  
 minuit (*midnight*)  
**twenty**, vingt  
**twenty-first**, vingt et unième  
**twenty-five**, vingt-cinq  
**twice**, deux fois  
**two**, deux

**U**

- umbrella**, parapluie, *m.*  
**uncle**, oncle, *m.*  
**under**, sous  
**understand**, comprendre (§ 256)  
**undertaking**, entreprise, *f.*  
**unhappy**, malheureux  
**unless**, à moins que... (ne)  
**until**, jusqu'à; (*with verb*) jus-  
 qu'à ce que  
**upset** (*something*), renverser  
**us**, nous  
**use**, employer (§ 151)  
**useful**, utile  
**useless**, inutile

**V**

- vegetable**, légume, *m.*  
**ventilator**, soupirail, *m.*  
**very**, très, bien  
**Vesuvius**, le Mont-Vésuve  
**Victoria**, Victoria  
**victory**, victoire, *f.*

**village**, village, *m.*  
**vinegar**, vinaigre, *m.*  
**visit**, *s.*, visite, *f.*  
**visit**, *v.*, visiter  
**visiting-card**, carte de visite, *f.*  
**voice**, voix, *f.*

**W**

**wait for**, attendre  
**wake up**, s'éveiller  
**Wales**, le pays de Galles  
**walk**, *v.*, se promener (*for pleasure*), marcher (*as opposed to driving, &c.*)  
**walk**, *s.*, promenade, *f.*  
*to take a walk*, faire une promenade  
**wall**, *s.*, mur, *m.*  
**walnut**, noix, *f.*  
**walnut-tree**, noyer, *m.*  
**want**, désirer, vouloir, *ir.* (§229)  
**warm**, *adj.*, chaud  
**warm oneself**, se chauffer  
**warn**, avertir  
**watch**, *s.*, montre, *f.*  
**watchmaker**, horloger, *m.*  
**water**, eau, *f.*  
**way**, chemin, *m.*; route, *f.*  
**we**, nous  
**wear**, *v.*, porter  
**weather**, temps, *m.*  
*it is fine weather*, il fait beau temps  
**week**, semaine, *f.* (see § 60)  
**weigh**, peser (§ 149)  
**well**, *adv.*, bien  
**what!** (*exclamatory*), quoi!  
**what?** (*interrog. adj.*), quel (*f.* quelle), *pl.* quels (*f.* quelles)  
**what** (*that which*), *nom.* ce qui, *acc.* ce que  
**what?** (*interrog. pron.*), que? qu'est-ce qui?  
**when**, quand, lorsque (quand only, *when interrogative*)

**where**, où  
**whether**, si  
**which?** (*interrog. adj.*), quel (*f.* quelle), *pl.* quels (*f.* quelles)  
**which?** (*interrog. pron.*), lequel (*f.* laquelle), *pl.* lesquels (*f.* lesquelles)  
**which** (*relat. pron.*), qui, que, lequel, &c.  
**white**, blanc (*f.* blanche)  
**who**, qui  
**whole** (*the*), tout le (*f.* toute la)  
**whom**, que  
**whom?** (*interrog. pron.*), qui? qui est-ce que?  
**whose** (*of whom, of which*), dont, duquel (*f.* de laquelle), *pl.* desquels (*f.* desquelles)  
**whose?** à qui?  
**why**, pourquoi  
**wide**, large  
**wife**, épouse, femme, *f.*  
**wild**, sauvage, féroce  
**window**, fenêtre, *f.*  
**wine**, vin, *m.*  
**wing**, aile, *f.*  
**winter**, hiver, *m.*  
**wipe**, essuyer (§ 151)  
**wise**, sage  
**wish**, *v.*, désirer, vouloir, *ir.* (§ 229)  
**with**, avec  
**without**, sans (*prep.*); sans que (*conj.*)  
**woman**, femme, *f.*  
**won't you?** n'est-ce pas? (§ 122)  
**word**, *s.*, mot, *m.*  
**work**, *s.*, travail, *m.*  
**work**, *v.*, travailler  
**worker**, travailleur, *m.*  
**workman**, ouvrier, *m.*  
**worse**, *adj.*, pire  
**worse**, *adv.*, pis  
**wound**, *v.*, blesser  
**write**, écrire, *ir.* (§ 24)  
**wrong** (*to be*), avoir tort  
**wrongly**, à tort

## Y

**year**, an, *m.*; année, *f.*  
*many years ago*, il y a bien  
 des années  
*the new year*, le nouvel an  
*last year*, l'année dernière  
*next year*, l'année prochaine  
*every year*, tous les ans  
**yellow**, jaune

**yes**, oui, si (§ 177)  
**yesterday**, hier  
**yet**, cependant  
*not yet*, pas encore  
**you**, vous, tu, te, toi  
**young**, jeune  
**young lady**, demoiselle, *f.*  
**your**, votre (*pl.* vos)  
**yours**, le (la) vôtre (*pl.* les  
 vôtres)

TO THE STUDENT.

The following books can be recommended to the Student who has gone through this Grammar:—FRENCH SELF-TAUGHT is an efficient method of gaining a practical acquaintance with a large vocabulary of words in common use, and facility of expression in every-day conversation. It supplies throughout an excellent system of Phonetic Pronunciation. RULES OF FRENCH GRAMMAR AT A GLANCE, and FRENCH VERBS AT A GLANCE, are two books which present the more difficult features of the language in a concise, systematic and simplified manner; they are both written by French teachers whose success in their classes stamps these books with the mark of worth. Then, for continued study, nothing adds more to the Student's grasp of a language than good Readers, and DUDEVANT'S COMPLETE FRENCH READER and DE MARNEY'S TOUJOURS PRÉT (with KEY) are most useful. Particulars and prices of these books will be found on the cover of this volume, or in the catalogue bound up with it. A copy of the catalogue can also be had post free on application to the Publishers.

# KEY

TO

## French Grammar Self-Caught

BY

J. LAFFITTE, B.-ès-L.,

*Principal French Master, City of London School.*



LONDON :

E. MARLBOROUGH & Co., 51, OLD BAILEY, E.C.

1912.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.]



## PREFACE.

---

**I**N order that the student who works independently of a teacher may obtain the fullest advantage from the use of this Key, the subject of each Exercise in the Grammar is given at the head of the translation of it in this book, and a list of the subjects is to be found on pp. 5 and 6.

By this means the student can at once turn to a collection of sentences illustrating any of the rules contained in the Grammar, which may be taken as models, and many of them may profitably be committed to memory.

The French sentences can also be used as exercises in translation into English, the results being checked by comparison with the original Exercises in the Grammar. For the student who is learning the conversational sentences in *French Self-Taught*, in which the phonetic pronunciation of the French words is supplied, this Key provides much additional matter of a useful character; the sentences should be repeated aloud until they can be uttered at the ordinary rate of speech, and in a natural tone and manner.

J. L.

*London, 1912.*

## EREBACH.

In Erebach, a town of the district of Würzburg, in the state of Bavaria, there is a small church, which contains a very fine collection of Gothic sculpture. The figures are all in wood, and are painted in a manner that gives them a very lifelike appearance. They represent various scenes from the life of Christ, and are particularly interesting on account of their great age. The figures are all in a state of decay, and some of them have lost their heads and arms. The most remarkable figure is a seated Christ, holding a book in his left hand and a cross in his right. He is dressed in a simple robe, and has a crown of thorns on his head. The figure is very lifelike, and appears to be in a state of deep thought or meditation. There are also several figures of the Virgin Mary, and of the twelve apostles. The figures are all in a state of decay, and some of them have lost their heads and arms. The most remarkable figure is a seated Christ, holding a book in his left hand and a cross in his right. He is dressed in a simple robe, and has a crown of thorns on his head. The figure is very lifelike, and appears to be in a state of deep thought or meditation. There are also several figures of the Virgin Mary, and of the twelve apostles.

# CONTENTS

BEING A LIST OF THE SUBJECTS  
DEALT WITH IN THE EXERCISES

Exercise.	Page.
I. The Definite Article ...	7
II. The Definite Article preceded by <i>de</i> and <i>à</i> ...	7
III. The Indefinite and Partitive Articles, and introducing <i>Avoir</i> ...	8
IV. The use of the Definite and Indefinite Articles, and introducing <i>Être</i> ...	9
V. Recapitulation of Exercises I.-IV. ...	9
VI. The plural of Nouns, and introducing the First Conjugation ...	10
VII. The plural of Nouns and Adjectives ...	10
VIII. Verbs of the First Conjugation ...	11
IX. Agreement of Adjectives, and Irregular Feminines of Adjectives ...	12
X. Irregular Feminines of Adjectives ...	12
XI. Irregular Feminines of Nouns and Adjectives	13
XII. The place of Adjectives, and introducing the Compound Tenses of Verbs ...	14
XIII. The Degrees of Comparison, and the Interrogative and Negative Conjugation of Verbs	14
XIV. Possessive and Demonstrative Adjectives ...	15
XV. The Cardinal Numerals, and introducing the Second Conjugation ...	16
XVI. The Ordinals, Days, Months and Seasons ...	17
XVII. The Second Conjugation; Age, Time, etc. ...	17
XVIII. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns ...	18

## CONTENTS.

Exercise.	Page.
XIX. Disjunctive Pronouns, and introducing the Third Conjugation ...	... ... 19
XX. Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns	... 19
XXI. The Third Conjugation, & Relative Pronouns	20
XXII. Interrogative Adjectives and Pronouns, and introducing the Fourth Conjugation	... 21
XXIII. Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns ...	... 22
XXIV. "A Drill on Verbs" ...	... 22
XXV. The four Conjugations and the Passive Verb	23
XXVI. Reflexive Verbs, and the Past Participle with <i>Avoir</i> ...	... 24
XXVII. The use of the Subjunctive Mood ...	... 25
XXVIII. Impersonal Verbs, and Peculiarities in some Verbs of the First Conjugation ...	... 26
XXIX. <i>Avoir</i> used instead of <i>Être</i> ; use of some tenses of the Indicative ...	... 27
XXX. The Infinitive without a Preposition, and with <i>de</i> and <i>à</i> ...	... 28
XXXI. <i>Must, Ought, Could, Might, Can</i> , etc.	... 29
XXXII. Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions	... 30

# FRENCH GRAMMAR SELF-TAUGHT.

---

## KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

---

### EXERCICE I.

(*On the Definite Article; §1, p. 10.*)

1. Le frère. 2. La sœur. 3. Le père. 4. La mère.
  5. Le fils. 6. La fille. 7. L'oncle. 8. La tante.
  9. L'homme. 10. La femme. 11. Le garçon. 12. La fille.
  13. L'enfant. 14. La page. 15. Le soleil.
  16. La lune. 17. L'étoile. 18. La terre. 19. Le roi.
  20. La reine. 21. Les villes. 22. L'église.
  23. La gare. 24. L'hôtel. 25. L'horloge. 26. La montre.
  27. Le jardin. 28. L'herbe. 29. Les plumes.
  30. L'encre. 31. Le papier. 32. Les crayons.
  33. L'heure. 34. La minute. 35. Le jour.
  36. La semaine. 37. Le mois. 38. L'année.
- 

### EXERCICE II.

(*The Definite Article preceded by de and à; §§ 2-3, pp. 11-12.*)

- (a) 1. Du—au—frère. 2. De la—à la—sœur. 3. Du —au—père. 4. De la—à la—mère. 5. Du—au—fils.
6. De la—à la—fille. 7. De l'—à l'—oncle. 8. De la —à la—tante. 9. De l'—à l'—homme. 10. De la—à la—femme. 11. Du—au—garçon. 12. De la—à la—fille. 13. De l'—à l'—enfant. 14. De la—à la—page.
15. Du—au—soleil. 16. De la—à la—lune. 17. De l'—à l'—étoile. 18. De la—à la—terre. 19. Du—au —roi. 20. De la—à la—reine. 21. Des—aux—villes.
22. De l'—à l'—église. 23. De la—à la—gare. 24. De

l'—à l'—hôtel. 25. De l'—à l'—horloge. 26. De la—à la—montre. 27. Du—au—jardin. 28. De l'—à l'—herbe. 29. Des—aux—plumes. 30. De l'—à l'—encre. 31. Du—au—papier. 32. Des—aux—crayons. 33. De l'—à l'—heure. 34. Du—au—jour. 35. De la—à la—semaine. 36. Du—au—mois. 37. De l'—à l'—année.

(b) 1. Le neveu du roi. 2. La nièce de la reine. 3. À<sup>1</sup> l'homme. 4. À la plume de l'enfant. 5. À la gare. 6. Les livres du garçon. 7. Aux jours de la semaine. 8. À l'horloge de l'église. 9. À l'herbe des jardins. 10. Il a le crayon de l'enfant. 11. Elle avait la montre de la fille. 12. Au mois de l'année. 13. De l'hôtel à la gare. 14. Des jardins de la ville. 15. Aux pages du livre. 16. La mère des enfants. 17. Les légumes du jardinier.

### EXERCICE III.

(*The Indefinite and Partitive Articles, and introducing Avoir; §§ 4-6, pp. 12, 13 & 60.*)

1. Avez-vous du vin?
2. Ils avaient (*or eurent*) de la viande.
3. A-t-il du lait?
4. Nous aurons de l'eau.
5. Vous auriez trop de café.
6. Nous avions de bon chocolat.
7. J'avais de la bière.
8. Je n'aurai pas d'amis.
9. J'avais de bon bœuf.
10. J'eus du mouton.
11. Aviez-vous (*or eûtes-vous*) du sucre?
12. J'aurais de l'huile et du vinaigre.
13. Je n'aurai pas d'eau.
14. Nous eûmes des pommes et des poires.
15. Ils n'avaient (*or n'eurent*) pas de sel.
16. Voici des enfants qui n'ont pas de mère.
17. Son frère aura de l'argent.
18. Ma sœur eut (*or avait*) du thé et un œuf.
19. Avez-vous de la monnaie?
20. Le garçon n'avait pas de plume.

<sup>1</sup> Note that accents must not be used over capitals in writing (Introduction II., N.B.).

## EXERCICE IV.

(*The use of the Definite and Indefinite Articles, and introducing Être; §§ 7-10, pp. 14, 15 & 60.*)

1. Le pauvre Henri est très malade.
2. Le roi Édouard était le fils de la reine Victoria.
3. L'Angleterre est-elle une île?
4. L'empereur de Russie était (*or fut*) en France il y a quatre ans.
5. Il est horloger.
6. Il vient deux fois par semaine.
7. Le sucre coûte trente centimes la livre.
8. Le colonel Brown était le frère du prince.
9. Le vin est cher, la bière est bon marché.
10. Êtes-vous officier?
11. Le dernier roi de France fut Louis-Philippe.
12. Les garçons ne sont pas toujours diligents.
13. N'est-il pas acteur?
14. Mon frère était médecin.
15. L'Asie est plus grande que l'Europe.

## EXERCICE V.

(*Recapitulation of Exercises I-IV.*)

1. Le chapeau de la dame est noir.
2. Il n'y a pas de pendule dans cette maison.
3. La porte de la chambre est fermée; la fenêtre est ouverte.
4. Les domestiques sont rares dans la ville.
5. Le docteur Smith n'a pas d'enfants.
6. Avez-vous une montre?
7. Nous étions à l'hôtel quand ils étaient à la gare.
8. Le roi et la reine seront dans l'église.
9. Si j'étais riche, j'aurais une automobile.
10. Auriez-vous une bicyclette?
11. Sera-t-il soldat ou marin?
12. L'empereur d'Allemagne est le cousin du roi George.
13. Les garçons auront des plumes et du papier.
14. N'aurez-vous pas une lettre de votre mère?
15. Étions-nous en Amérique?
16. Ont-ils de l'eau?
17. Cet homme a de bon vin.
18. Ils sont en Espagne trois fois par mois.
19. J'ai trop de vinaigre.
20. Il y avait de la bière à cinquante centimes le verre.

## EXERCICE VI.

(*The Plural of Nouns, and introducing the First Conjugation ; §§ 14-20, pp. 16-18 & 62.*)

1. La voix des dames. 2. Les lignes du livre. 3. Les chaises et les fauteuils de la salle à manger. 4. Les bateaux ont des voiles. 5. Le général aime ses neveux. 6. Les journaux ont dix pages. 7. Les rues n'ont pas de trottoirs. 8. Les genoux des chevaux. 9. Les amiraux aimèrent le bal. 10. Aimez-vous les bijoux ? 11. Les enfants aiment les joujoux. 12. Les yeux de la fille. 13. Il aimait ses fils et ses filles. 14. Vous aimerez les tableaux. 15. Ils aimaient les coraux. 16. Il y a des soldats dans les hôpitaux. 17. Nous aurons les baux de ces maisons. 18. Les travaux des ingénieurs. 19. Mesdames, vous n'avez pas de cuillères (*or* cuillers). 20. Ces animaux sont des chacals.

## EXERCICE VII.

(*The Plural of Nouns and Adjectives ; §§ 14-20, pp. 16-19.*)

1. Les rues de la ville sont larges. 2. Vous aimeriez les magasins. 3. En France tous les villages ont un maire. 4. Il y a des choux dans les champs. 5. Les animaux sauvages sont dans les forêts. 6. La petite fille avait les yeux bleus, ses frères avaient les cheveux blonds. 7. Les canaux seront utiles. 8. Nous avions des voitures et des chevaux. 9. Les bureaux de la maison sont ouverts tous les jours. 10. Aimez-vous l'hiver ? Non, j'aime l'été. 11. Les fleurs du printemps, les fruits de l'automne. 12. Ces portes ont deux verrous. 13. Ces raisins sont très doux. 14. Nous avions des oranges et des pommes. 15. Les couteaux

et les fourchettes sont sur la table. 16. Ces généraux avaient (*or eurent*) plusieurs croix. 17. Les habitants ne seraient pas silencieux. 18. Aimeront-ils les vins vieux ? 19. Les gardes royaux ont des chevaux. 20. Tous les vaisseaux ne seraient pas dans le port.

### EXERCICE VIII.

(*Verbs of the First Conjugation; p. 62.*)

#### PRESENT.

Je porte  
tu portes  
il porte  
nous portons  
vous portez  
ils portent

#### IMPERFECT.

Je portais  
tu portais  
il portait  
nous portions  
vous portiez  
ils portaient

#### PRETERITE.

Je chantai  
tu chantas  
il chanta  
nous chantâmes  
vous chantâtes  
ils chantèrent

---

Je parle  
tu parles  
il parle  
nous parlons  
vous parlez  
ils parlent

---

Je parlais  
tu parlais  
il parlait  
nous parlions  
vous parliez  
ils parlaient

---

Je donnai  
tu donnas  
il donna  
nous donnâmes  
vous donnâtes  
ils donnèrent

---

Je cherche  
tu cherches  
il cherche  
nous cherchons  
vous cherchez  
ils cherchent

---

Je cherchais  
tu cherchais  
il cherchait  
nous cherchions  
vous cherchiez  
ils cherchaient

## EXERCICE IX.

(*Agreement of Adjectives*, §§ 21-22; and *Irregular Feminines of Adjectives*, § 23 [1-5], pp. 20-21.)

- (a) 1. La petite marchande a de bons légumes.  
 2. L'heureuse mère donnera des joujoux à ses jolis enfants. 3. La dernière poire n'était pas douce. 4. Le jardinier coupait l'herbe verte. 5. Les bonnes oranges arrivèrent d'Espagne. 6. Elle porta une robe neuve. 7. La barbe rousse des gardes impériaux. 8. Êtes-vous parisiennes, mesdames? 9. Je cherche une montre pareille. 10. Il ne trouva pas une collection complète. 11. Les deux souverains eurent une entrevue secrète. 12. Elle n'est pas sujette à cette maladie.

- (b) 1. Nos braves soldats gagnèrent (*or* ont gagné) une grande victoire. 2. La première voiture arrivera tout à l'heure. 3. La destruction des animaux fut complète. 4. Cette femme est très fière. 5. Donnez-moi l'encre rouge et les crayons bleus. 6. Sa fille aînée n'est pas contente. 7. J'ai une collection pareille. 8. Ils (*or* elles) portaient des ombrelles vertes. 9. La maison avait une porte neuve. 10. Je cherche une ancienne église. 11. La bonne viande est rare dans ce pays.

## EXERCICE X.

(*Irregular Feminines of Adjectives*; § 23 [6-8], pp. 21-22.)

- (a) 1. L'herbe est sèche. 2. La matinée est belle. 3. La vieille dame est la bienfaitrice des pauvres. 4. La directrice sera nouvelle. 5. Ma fille, vous êtes folle. 6. La bibliothèque publique de la belle ville. 7. Ces cantatrices sont grecques ou turques. 8. L'actrice était meilleure que l'acteur. 9. Ma sœur est majeure. 10. La neige est blanche. 11. Êtes-vous bonnes danseuses, mesdemoiselles? 12. Elle aura une robe blanche.

- (b) 1. Ce bel homme est acteur. 2. Il ne donna pas (*or n'a pas donné*) une réponse franche. 3. Il cherche une meilleure position (*or situation*). 4. La nouvelle année commence demain. 5. Ils regardaient (*or regardèrent*) la bibliothèque publique. 6. Le nouvel ami de mon frère n'est pas âgé (*or vieux*). 7. Nous regardons la neige blanche. 8. Ils couperont ce vieil arbre. 9. Cette femme est une danseuse turque. 10. La terre est sèche. 11. Ce vin est de qualité supérieure. 12. La vieille femme est folle.

### EXERCICE XI.

(*Irregular Feminines of Nouns and Adjectives;*

*§§ 24-26, pp. 22-33.*)

- (a) 1. Une grosse canne. 2. Nous avons fait une longue promenade. 3. Cette poule est très grasse. 4. Votre gouvernante est gentille. 5. Donnez-moi de l'eau fraîche. 6. La compagne favorite de la vieille reine. 7. Ma sœur n'est pas lasse. 8. Il y avait une porte basse. 9. Cette paysanne était sotte. 10. Cette rue est très longue.

- (b) 1. Il portait une grosse canne. 2. Cette encre est épaisse. 3. La duchesse a fait sa promenade favorite. 4. Êtes-vous la gouvernante de cette jolie petite fille? 5. La crème était trop épaisse et elle n'était pas fraîche. 6. Le jardinier coupera les grosses branches de cet arbre. 7. La nouvelle impératrice donna (*or a donné*) un cadeau à la princesse. 8. La directrice de l'école est ma grand'mère. 9. Le père et la mère de l'enfant étaient fous. 10. L'influence de ce pays est nulle.

## EXERCICE XII.

(*The Place of Adjectives, and introducing the Compound Tenses of Verbs; §§ 27-31, pp. 25-27 & 64.*)

1. Ma sœur étudie la langue française.
2. Il cherchera une meilleure plume.
3. Ma jeune nièce a acheté du ruban bleu.
4. Nous rencontrâmes (*or* avons rencontré) une famille irlandaise au bord de la mer l'année dernière.
5. Il racontera une histoire amusante après dîner.
6. Les employés de cette maison sont tous bons travailleurs.
7. Sa chère mère épousa (*or* a épousé) un monsieur espagnol.
8. Il parle plusieurs langues étrangères.
9. Ce petit chien noir a trouvé son maître.
10. Les grosses branches de ces grands arbres donnent beaucoup d'ombre.
11. Les armes royales étaient sur la dernière voiture.
12. Je demandai (*or* J'ai demandé) la route (*or* le chemin) à ce gros policeman.
13. J'ai payé dix livres ma nouvelle bicyclette.
14. Ce matin nous avons fait une longue promenade.
15. Avez-vous visité cette belle église ? Pas encore.
16. Nous avons donné un livre intéressant au petit garçon anglais.
17. Cette belle automobile a coûté dix mille francs.
18. Quand visiterez-vous l'exposition japonaise ? Peut-être demain.
19. La dernière année du règne du roi a été pleine de tristes incidents.
20. Vous trouverez mon portefeuille noir sur la petite table.

## EXERCICE XIII.

(*The Degrees of Comparison, and the Interrogative and Negative Conjugation of Verbs; §§ 32-36, pp. 27-29.*)

1. La neige est plus blanche que le lait.
2. Il est plus heureux qu'un roi.
3. La Seine est-elle moins profonde que la Tamise ?
4. Londres est la ville la plus peuplée d'Europe.
5. Il a serré la main à son plus cruel ennemi.
6. Ma maison n'est-elle pas aussi

grande que celle-là? 7. Si, mais elle n'est pas si commode. 8. Le plus beau tableau était celui du plus jeune artiste. 9. Avez-vous goûté ce vin rouge? C'est le meilleur. 10. Il parle très bien, mais sa plus petite sœur parle encore mieux. 11. Ne serait-il pas le plus habile médecin de la ville? 12. Nous ne trouvâmes pas (*or* n'avons pas trouvé) la moindre trace d'eau dans la cave. 13. La nourriture n'était-elle pas pire aujourd'hui que la semaine dernière? 14. Ma chambre (à coucher) n'a pas les plus grandes fenêtres. 15. Ces marins ne sont-ils pas plus braves et plus forts que vous ne pensiez? 16. Le roi était l'homme le plus sage de son temps. 17. Jeudi a été la journée la plus chaude du mois. 18. Cette femme est très malheureuse, son fils est mort. 19. À mon avis, une rose blanche n'est pas si jolie qu'une jaune. 20. Il a quitté ses plus fidèles amis pour un étranger.

## EXERCICE XIV.

(*Possessive and Demonstrative Adjectives; §§ 37-43, pp. 30-31.*)

1. Mes frères ont acheté ~~ce~~ tapis.
2. Je trouvai (*or* j'ai trouvé) ces ciseaux sur la cheminée.
3. Un de mes oncles nous a donné cette maison.
4. Ne parle-t-il pas cette langue aussi bien que sa sœur?
5. Je rencontrais (*or* j'ai rencontré) ces messieurs à la gare.
6. Apportez-moi mes pantoufles; elles sont sous ce fauteuil.
7. Montrez votre billet à cet inspecteur.
8. Mon déjeuner est-il prêt? Pas encore, monsieur.
9. Ce poisson n'est pas frais; apportez-moi autre chose.
10. Y a-t-il assez de sucre dans votre thé?
11. Vous trouverez son nom sur cette carte de visite.
12. N'avez-vous pas prêté votre parapluie à mon frère aîné?

13. Nous traverserons le fleuve (*or* la rivière) par ce pont. 14. Ce grand bâtiment est-il une fabrique (*or* usine)? 15. Nous envoyons ces journaux à un de nos compatriotes en Amérique. 16. Il y a un champ au bout de cette rue. 17. Vos sœurs sont-elles prêtes? Nous partons. 18. Ce train arrivera-t-il de bonne heure? 19. Son frère et sa sœur sont morts. 20. Son ambition n'était pas très grande.

### EXERCICE XV.

(*The Cardinal Numerals, and introducing the Second Conjugation;*  
 §§ 44-49, pp. 32-34 & 62.)

(a) Trente-quatre, quarante-neuf, soixante et un, soixante-sept, cent six, cent vingt et un, cent soixante-dix, trois cent quatre-vingts, quatre cents, cinq cent quatre-vingt-quatre, huit cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf, sept mille cinquante, soixante-quinze mille, huit cent quarante mille cinq cent trente et un.

(b) 1. Mille francs font environ quarante livres sterling. 2. Le navire portait quatre-vingts émigrants. 3. Ce matin nous avons fait vingt et un milles à bicyclette. 4. Nous avons compté trente-sept arbres le long de cette rue. 5. J'achetai (*or* j'ai acheté) cinq cents actions hier. 6. Le roi Édouard est mort en l'an mil neuf cent dix (*or* dix-neuf cent dix), et la reine Victoria, sa mère, en mil neuf cent un (*or* dix-neuf cent un). 7. Londres a plus de quatre millions d'habitants. 8. Le sénat français se compose de trois cents membres; il y a aussi cinq cent quatre-vingt-onze députés. 9. La France se divise en quatre-vingt-six départements. 10. Mille huit cents (*or* dix-huit cents) hommes ont péri dans ce désastre. 11. Ce domaine (*or* cette propriété) a coûté deux millions de francs.

## EXERCICE XVI.

(*The Ordinals, Days, Months and Seasons; §§ 50-54, pp. 35-37.*)

1. Je suis né le trois mai mil huit cent quatre-vingt-six.
2. Janvier est le premier mois de l'année et décembre le douzième.
3. Nous avons nos vacances en été.
4. Vous trouverez la faute dans la première ligne de cette page.
5. Il n'y a pas de faute dans cette ligne, mais il y a une faute d'impression dans la vingt et unième ligne.
6. Vous commencerez à la page deux cent.
7. Le roi et la reine ouvriront le parlement mardi.
8. L'auditoire applaudira le premier acte de la pièce.
9. Ils ont quitté la Suisse, et ils arriveront ici le premier.
10. N'a-t-il pas demandé les six premiers?
11. Au printemps nous passons les soirées au jardin.
12. Le dimanche nous invitons quelques amis.
13. Nous habitons (*or* demeurons) au numéro quatre-vingt, rue de la Paix.
14. Prenez la deuxième rue à droite et la cinquième à gauche.
15. Elle chantera au concert le onze courant.

## EXERCICE XVII.

(*The Second Conjugation; Age, Time, &c.; §§ 55-60, pp. 37-39.*)

- (a)
1. Nous agissons.
  2. Il guérissait.
  3. Nous obéirons.
  4. Puniraient-ils?
  5. J'ai réussi.
  6. Établissez-vous?
  7. Vous remplîtes.
  8. J'avais choisi.
  9. Choisissons.
  10. Abolissez.
  11. Ils n'applaudirent pas.
  12. Il frémissoit.
  13. Je bâtirai.
  14. Ne démoliriez-vous pas?
  15. Ils n'avaient pas réussi.
  16. N'obéissons-nous pas?

- (b)
1. Nous choisîmes (*or* avons choisi) une douzaine de livres.
  2. Il a vingt-cinq ans; quel âge a sa sœur?
  3. Nous déjeunons à sept heures et demie tous les matins.
  4. À quelle heure dînez-vous? À midi et

demi. 5. Il a donné l'ordre, obéissez. 6. J'ai demandé son consentement il y a une semaine. 7. Mon père sera de retour de samedi en huit. 8. Cette pendule avance de vingt minutes. 9. Le vapeur part tous les jeudis à quatre heures m. (du matin). 10. Des centaines d'Allemands visitent ce château tous les ans. 11. Il retournera l'année prochaine; il aura été absent une dizaine d'années. 12. Ils guériraient des milliers d'enfants si l'hôpital était plus grand. 13. Les bureaux fermeront dans une demi-heure. 14. Le train quitte Paris à minuit et n'arrive pas à Marseille avant deux heures s. (du soir). 15. Ils remplissaient le réservoir trois fois par semaine. 16. Achetons une demi-livre de cerises et trois quarts de livre de raisins. 17. Le village est à une dizaine de kilomètres de la gare. 18. J'ai une cinquantaine de rosiers dans mon jardin. 19. Ce champ a soixante-dix mètres de long (*or* longueur) sur (*or* et) trente et un (mètres) de large (*or* largeur). *Or*: Ce champ est long de soixante-dix mètres et large de trente et un. 20. Nous passerons une quinzaine au bord de la mer.

### EXERCICE XVIII.

(*Conjunctive Personal Pronouns*; §§ 61-68, pp. 40-42.)

1. Je le donnai (*or* je l'ai donné) à mon frère. 2. Il l'a cherché dans ma chambre. 3. Prêtez-le-nous, mais ne le leur donnez pas. 4. Il leur en a envoyé. 5. Je vous apporterai votre parapluie quand je l'aurai trouvé (*see* §161). 6. Voici vos lettres, le facteur vient de les apporter. 7. Présentez-moi à votre ami s'il vous plaît (*or* je vous prie). 8. Nous le lui montrâmes (*or* nous le lui avons montré). 9. Aime-t-il les fraises? Oui, il en a mangé. 10. Je la louai, mais je le blâmai (*or* Je l'ai louée [*see* §137], mais je l'ai blâmé). 11. Cet habile médecin me guérira (*or* m'a guéri) dans un mois.

12. Voici mon verre, ne le remplissez pas. 13. La loi le punira, il le mérite. 14. J'ai choisi deux espèces, je vous les montrerai. 15. Vous en aurez demain, je vous y en enverrai. 16. Avez-vous nettoyé mes souliers ? Oui, monsieur, les voici. 17. Ces enfants sont-ils malades ? 18. Combien de personnes y avait-il au bal ? Il y en avait deux cents. 19. Êtes-vous la gouvernante de cette petite fille ? Je ne la suis pas. 20. Montrez-moi un chapeau de paille, s'il vous plaît.

### EXERCICE XIX.

(*Disjunctive Pronouns, and introducing the Third Conjugation ; §§ 69-70, pp. 43-44 & 63.*)

1. Ce sont eux qui resteront ici. 2. Mon frère est plus expérimenté que lui. 3. Nous dînerons sans toi si tu es en retard. 4. Elle aime la campagne ; mais moi, je préfère la ville. 5. Lui, trahir le meilleur de ses amis ! Je ne lui pardonnerai pas. 6. Qui blâmez-vous ? Eux, je suppose. 7. Je reçus (*or j'ai reçu*) une lettre de lui ce matin. 8. Elle et son frère rencontreront les invités à la gare. 9. Le gérant (*or directeur*) reçoit la correspondance, écrivez-lui. 10. Venez avec moi, je vous les montrerai. 11. Eux, qui avaient oublié leurs voisins, reçurent (*or ont reçu*) une récompense. 12. Je ne trouvai (*or n'ai trouvé*) que lui, elle et sa mère étaient sorties.

### EXERCICE XX.

(*Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns ; §§ 71-78, pp. 45-47.*)

1. Ce cheval n'est-il pas de la même couleur que le mien ? 2. Sa conduite était celle d'un fou. 3. C'est Charles qui a bâti cette maison et la leur. 4. Qui

sont ces deux dames ? Celle-ci est une grande actrice, celle-là est Madame B. 5. Ce dictionnaire était-il celui que je vous prêtai (*or ai prêté*). 6. Laquelle des deux rues est-ce ? Celle-ci ou celle-là ? 7. Vos efforts et les siens seraient tout à fait inutiles. 8. Donnez ceci à l'homme et cela à la femme. 9. Voici mon parapluie, mais où est le vôtre ? 10. Ce sac est celui de mon cousin (*or à mon cousin*). 11. Ce doit être le mot qu'il cherchait. 12. Ne mangez pas cela, ce n'est pas bon. 13. J'écris à mon collègue, avez-vous écrit au vôtre ? 14. A-t-elle fini son travail ? J'aurai fini le mien dans un quart d'heure. 15. Lisez-vous le journal d'aujourd'hui ? Non, je lis celui d'hier. 16. Ces enveloppes sont pareilles aux nôtres. 17. Marchez avec ma sœur et je marcherai avec la vôtre. 18. Ceci est à moi et cela est à eux. 19. Voici les deux feuilles ; corrigez celle-ci et je corrigerai celle-là. 20. Je l'aperçus (*or l'ai aperçu*) au théâtre, il était avec un de ses amis.

### EXERCICE XXI.

(*The Third Conjugation, and Relative Pronouns* ; p. 63 & §§ 79-85, pp. 48-50.)

(a) 1. J'aperçois. 2. Nous concevons l'idée. 3. Ils déçoivent. 4. Ils percevaient (*or perçurent*). 5. Apercevait-il ? 6. Il ne conçut pas le plan. 7. Décevra-t-il ? 8. Ne percevraient-ils pas ? 9. L'homme aperçut-il ? 10. L'enfant n'avait-il pas déçu ? 11. Vous ne décevez pas. 12. Déceviez-vous ?

(b) 1. Le cadeau qu'il a reçu est très beau. 2. Voici la dame dont vous parlez, présentez-moi. 3. Entrez et dites-moi ce que vous avez remarqué. 4. Réussira-t-il dans le travail qu'il a commencé ? 5. L'étranger auquel (*or à qui*) je parlais est un Américain. 6. Ils

admireraient ce que vous avez choisi. 7. Cet éléphant, dont la force est si grande, est quelquefois très féroce. 8. La porte par laquelle les artistes entrent dans le théâtre est fermée. 9. Ces ouvriers démolissent la maison dans laquelle j'ai habité (*or demeuré*) pendant vingt ans. 10. J'ai cassé la chaise sur laquelle vous étiez assis. 11. J'ai rencontré l'homme sur lequel (*or qui*) vous comptez. 12. Le chanteur dont vous admirez la voix est tout jeune. 13. Il ne sait pas ce qu'il désire. 14. Il essaya de nager, ce qui nous amusa beaucoup. 15. La difficulté dont vous parlez n'est pas très grande.

## EXERCICE XXII.

(*Interrogative Adjectives and Pronouns; §§ 86-94, pp. 51-53;*  
*and introducing the Fourth Conjugation, p 63.)*

1. Quelle chambre désirez-vous? 2. Que vous avait-il raconté? 3. À qui était cet argent? Il était à son frère (*or c'était celui de son frère*). 4. Quoi! ils l'ont menacé! 5. À quoi travaillent-ils? 6. Laquelle de ces explications accepterez-vous? 7. Qu'est-ce qui vous fait mal? 8. Quel jour arriveraient-ils? 9. Par qui avez-vous envoyé le paquet? 10. Duquel (*or desquels*) de ces pays parlez-vous? 11. Qu'aperçûtes-vous? (*or qu'est-ce que vous aperçûtes?*) 12. À quelle gare avez-vous laissé vos bagages. 13. Que mangiez-vous? (*or qu'est-ce que vous mangiez?*) Des cerises et des fraises. 14. De quoi est-il mort? 15. Quel train attendez-vous? Nous attendons le bateau à vapeur (*or le paquebot*). 16. Par quel escalier descendîtes-vous? 17. Lesquels de ces chanteurs avez-vous entendus? 18. Avec qui correspondîtes-vous (*or avez-vous correspondu*)?

## EXERCICE XXIII.

(*Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns; §§ 95-104; pp. 53-56.*)

1. Il écouta soigneusement et entendit quelque chose d'important.
2. Chacun me donna une partie de son argent.
3. Toute la nation est en deuil, tout le monde (*or* chacun) porte des habits noirs.
4. Rien ne semblait plus facile, et pourtant personne ne pouvait le faire.
5. Plusieurs membres du jury étaient du même avis.
6. Laquelle de ces bicyclettes est la vôtre? Ni l'une ni l'autre.
7. Vous n'attendrez ni les uns ni les autres.
8. On lui assura que l'un ou l'autre des généraux serait nommé.
9. Tous les mois (*or* chaque mois) le gouvernement envoie des provisions à l'île.
10. Quelque chose d'extraordinaire est arrivé, aucune voiture n'a bougé.
11. On dit qu'il ne le fera ni pour l'une ni pour l'autre.
12. Si l'on vous demande pourquoi vous n'enlevez pas votre chapeau, que répondrez-vous?
13. Mangez ces pêches-ci, laissez les autres pour demain.
14. Vous le trouverez effacé à chaque page (*or* à toutes les pages).
15. N'a-t-il pas répondu à toutes vos lettres?
16. Chacune de ces nations a une flotte puissante.
17. Ils habitent une si belle maison.
18. Votre médecin n'a-t-il pas guéri quelques-uns de ceux qui étaient malades?
19. Les uns furent tués, les autres furent blessés; quelques-uns s'échappèrent.
20. Y a-t-il quelqu'un d'assez fou pour le défendre?

## EXERCICE XXIV.

(*A drill on Verbs.*)

- (a)
1. Does he not spend *or* is he not spending?
  2. He did not hesitate.
  3. Were they inviting *or* used they to invite *or* did they invite?
  4. Will the children play?
  5. Was not the tradesman selling *or* did not

the tradesman sell *or* used not, etc.? 6. Have we lost it? 7. Do not bring. 8. You were preparing it *or* you used to prepare it. 9. Are you fishing *or* do you fish? 10. Would not the neighbour stay? 11. Do I think? 12. Will he not work? 13. Did we warn? 14. Was I not warning *or* did I not warn? 15. We choose. 16. Will they not obey? 17. Do you establish *or* are you establishing? 18. They do not receive *or* they are not receiving. 19. Would they perceive? 20. He does not wait *or* he is not waiting (for). 21. Has this merchant not lost *or* did not this merchant lose? 22. Should I not have answered? 23. You were not going down *or* you used not to go down *or* you did not go down. 24. Is not the servant coming down? 25. Do I go down *or* am I going down?

(b) 1. Possédons-nous? 2. Présidiez-vous? 3. Il (*or* Elle) ne contribuera pas. 4. Votre associé n'avait-il pas décidé? 5. Ils n'applaudissent pas. 6. Ne réfléchîtes-vous pas? 7. Je ne trahirai pas. 8. Les avoués n'agiraient-ils pas? 9. Ils conçoivent l'idée. 10. Il a déçu. 11. Nous n'aurions pas reçu. 12. Est-ce que je prétends? 13. Rendiez-vous? 14. N'a-t-il (*or* n'a-t-elle) pas mordu? 15. La maison ne perdrait-elle pas? 16. La neige fondait-elle? 17. Existe-t-il? 18. Gérera-t-il la maison? 19. Ils obéissaient. 20. Vous ne remplissez pas. 21. Fournirais-je? 22. Aurions-nous garanti? 23. Le médecin guérira-t-il? 24. Recevriez-vous? 25. Correspondons.

## EXERCICE XXV.

(*The Four Conjugations and the Passive Verb; §§ 124-126,  
pp. 70-71.*)

1. Parlerons-nous de notre voyage quand nous retournerons?
2. Quoique nous fussions voisins, je ne le

visitais jamais. 3. Le projet (*or* plan) vous sera expliqué et alors vous agirez. 4. Nous sommes perdus si la marée monte. 5. Écoutez-moi et ne parlez pas tant. 6. On entendit le bruit toute la nuit. 7. Ne jouez plus, vous serez trop fatigué. 8. Cette machine a été inventée par un Anglais. 9. Pendant l'orage d'hier, plusieurs personnes ont été tuées par la foudre. 10. Ils seront étonnés si vous attrapez beaucoup de poisson. 11. Prêtez-moi une de vos lignes, la mienne est cassée. 12. Voici une ligne, les hameçons sont-ils rouillés ? 13. Si nous ne jouons pas au lawn-tennis cette (*or* cet) après-midi, ils seront très (*or* bien) désappointés. 14. Elle fut (*or* elle a été) accusée à tort, elle avait quitté la maison quand le vol fut commis. 15. Elle n'est pas sortie parce qu'elle est enrhumée. 16. Le brouillard n'est pas si épais maintenant, nous partirons. 17. Aussitôt que j'arrive au bureau, je réponds à toutes les lettres. 18. Il était allé à Londres, de sorte que nous fûmes obligés d'attendre. 19. Sans eux, nous serions tombés dans la rivière (*or* le fleuve). 20. Plus j'insistais, plus il refusait. 21. Une centaine de mineurs furent (*or* ont été) ensevelis vivants dans cette mine. 22. La maison a été vendue hier, les meubles sont à eux. 23. Il est sorti, il sera de retour à quatre heures et demie. 24. Recevrez-vous le montant (*or* la somme) la semaine prochaine ? 25. Je ne l'attends pas avant quinze jours (*or* une quinzaine).

## EXERCICE XXVI.

(*Reflexive Verbs, and the Past Participle with Avoir* ; §§ 129-137,  
pp. 74-77.)

1. Vous vous amuserez au bal. 2. Nous nous réjouîmes (*or* nous nous sommes réjouis) de son succès.
3. Ils rient de notre maladresse. 4. Nous nous sommes

rencontrés plusieurs fois au club. 5. Vous lèveriez-vous si l'on vous appelait? 6. Reposons-nous quelques minutes. 7. Vous étiez-vous aperçu qu'il était aveugle? 8. Il ne s'apercevra pas du changement. 9. Dépêchez-vous, nous manquerons le train. 10. Ils se saluèrent mais ils ne (se) parlèrent pas. 11. Ils s'enrichissent parce qu'ils sont très économes. 12. Montrez-moi les livres que vous avez achetés. 13. Je n'ai pas acheté ces livres, mon beau-frère me les a prêtés. 14. Ne vous baignez pas aujourd'hui, l'eau est trop froide. 15. Elle s'est enrhumée hier. 16. S'ils s'étaient adressés à un des directeurs, ils auraient été nommés. 17. Se seraient-ils établis à Londres ou en Amérique? 18. Elle ne s'entend (*or* s'accorde) jamais avec sa sœur, elles se querellent (*or* se disputent) toujours. 19. Auriez-vous attendu ces messieurs si vous aviez eu le temps? 20. Nous nous chaufferions s'il y avait du feu. 21. Si vous aviez été dans la chambre (*or* salle) ces enfants ne se seraient pas taquinés. 22. Ces demoiselles se regardaient quand j'entrai dans le salon. 23. Nous nous sommes promenés ce matin, le temps était superbe. 24. Ne s'était-il pas exposé à un grand danger? 25. Aussitôt que je m'approchai, l'oiseau s'envola.

## EXERCICE XXVII.

(*The Use of the Subjunctive Mood; §§ 138-141, pp. 78-80.*)

1. Il est temps que vous nous quittiez.
2. Je suis fâché que vous ne l'ayez pas rencontré.
3. Quoiqu'ils nous eussent aperçus, ils ne s'arrêtèrent pas.
4. Je ne pense (*or* crois) pas que vous réussissiez.
5. Je désire que vous attendiez, elle sera ici dans un quart d'heure.
6. Je mettrai cette lettre à la poste ce soir afin qu'il (*or* pour qu'il) la reçoive demain matin.
7. Je

crains que nous n'ayons tort. 8. Restons sous cet arbre jusqu'à ce qu'il ait cessé de pleuvoir. 9. C'est le plus long voyage que nous ayons jamais fait. 10. N'attendez pas qu'il soit très malade, envoyez chercher le médecin. 11. Nous ne craignons pas qu'il arrive avant nous. 12. Je doute que vous ayez raison. 13. Est-il temps que nous nous couchions? 14. Il vaut mieux que vous fermiez la fenêtre. 15. Il faut que nous vendions notre maison parce que nous quittons cette localité. 16. Je ne crois pas qu'il ait agi ainsi. 17. Je suis étonné (*or* surpris) que vous n'ayez pas loué votre maison. 18. Quoique le temps soit très mauvais, nous partirons pour le bord de la mer la semaine prochaine. 19. Vous êtes le seul de mes neveux qui réponde à mes lettres. 20. Je ne quitterai pas Londres à moins que vous ne m'accompagniez.

### EXERCICE XXVIII.

(*Impersonal Verbs, and Peculiarities in some Verbs of the First Conjugation; §§ 143-151, pp. 81-84.*)

1. Je pense (*or* crois) qu'il neige. 2. Y aura-t-il beaucoup de monde à ce bal? 3. Il a grêlé et tous les arbres fruitiers sont abîmés. 4. S'il fait beau (*or* si le temps est beau) demain, nous irons à la pêche. 5. Ne jouons pas au tennis aujourd'hui, il fait trop chaud. 6. Il gèle, la glace sera épaisse et nous patinerons. 7. Quelquefois il arrive qu'il n'est pas à la maison, alors son fils reçoit les clients. 8. Il abrégea son discours parce qu'il se faisait tard. 9. Nous le protégeons parce qu'il essaie (*or* essaye) de faire son devoir. 10. Il commençait à pleuvoir quand ils partirent. 11. Remplaçons ce mot par un autre.

12. Cette lettre ne pèsera-t-elle pas trop? (*or* Est-ce que cette lettre ne pèsera pas trop?) 13. Quand j'écris à l'étranger, j'emploie du papier plus mince. 14. Voulez-vous du thé ou du café? Je préfère du café, merci (*or* je vous remercie). 15. Nettoiera-t-il ces souliers? Oui, si on le paie (*or* paye). 16. Ne t'essuie pas les mains à cette serviette, elle n'est pas propre. 17. Pourquoi ne cachette-t-il pas cette lettre, ne l'a-t-il pas finie? 18. S'il gèle cette nuit, nous achèterons des patins demain matin. 19. Ce petit garçon épelle très bien maintenant. 20. J'achèterai cette raquette, elle est bon marché, elle est meilleur marché que la vôtre. 21. Nous mangeons du poisson deux fois par semaine pour déjeuner. 22. Quand leur père se retirera des affaires, lui succéderont-ils? 23. Il vous appellera à sept heures précises. 24. S'il s'appuie contre cette petite table, il la renversera. 25. Il ne s'agissait pas de cela.

### EXERCICE XXIX.

(Avoir used instead of Être; Use of some tenses of the Indicative;  
§§ 152-162, pp. 85-89.)

1. J'ai vu votre frère ce matin. 2. Il y a deux ans que nous habitons ici (*or* Nous habitons ici depuis deux ans). 3. Attendiez-vous depuis longtemps? (*or* Y avait-il longtemps que vous attendiez?) 4. Nous avions bien (*or* très) faim quand nous rentrâmes. 5. Ils auront soif quand ils arriveront. 6. Quand (*or* Lorsque) nous étions à Paris, nous faisions une promenade au Bois de Boulogne tous les jours. 7. Nous sommes allés au théâtre hier soir. 8. Dès qu'il (*or* Aussitôt qu'il) eut commencé à jouer, tout le monde se tut. 9. Vous avez

raison, il pleut. 10. Je vous appellerai dès que (*or* aussitôt que) je serai prêt. 11. Le facteur vint au moment où je rentrais. 12. Elle était très âgée (*or* vieille), elle montait (*or* monta) les escaliers très lentement. 13. Quand il me vit (*or* m'aperçut), il s'arrêta court et enleva (*or* ôta) son chapeau. 14. Il était deux heures de l'après-midi et nous n'avions pas déjeuné. 15. L'auteur de ce livre mourut en 1750 (mil sept cent cinquante). 16. Il s'est marié l'année dernière, sa femme est une de mes cousines. 17. Nos bagages furent examinés (*or* On examina nos bagages) à la frontière, je n'avais rien à déclarer. 18. L'endroit (*or* le lieu) était très (*or* bien) isolé, n'aviez-vous pas peur? 19. L'enfant jouait au jardin lorsque (*or* quand) sa mère l'appela. 20. Il tira son mouchoir de sa poche et s'essuya le front. 21. Je suis sûr qu'il a honte de sa conduite. 22. Lorsque j'entendis ces mots, j'eus envie de rire. 23. Je répondrai à votre lettre dès que (*or* aussitôt que) j'aurai des nouvelles de l'agent. 24. Ne l'avez-vous pas rencontré l'autre jour? Que vous a-t-il dit? 25. À peine eûtes-vous quitté (*or* Vous eûtes à peine quitté) le bureau que je reçus le télégramme (*or* la dépêche).

### EXERCICE XXX.

(*The Infinitive without a Preposition, and with de and à;*  
*§§ 163-168, pp. 90-94.*)

1. Quand désirez-vous partir, demain ou jeudi? 2. Je suis désolé de n'avoir pas rencontré votre ami l'autre jour. 3. Je suis prêt à vous donner tous les détails. 4. Il était facile de deviner qu'il était étranger. 5. Venez

dîner avec nous mardi prochain. 6. En été, je préfère dormir en plein air. 7. Il est sûr (*or* certain) de réussir, il a travaillé très dur. 8. Il essaya d'entrer dans la chambre, mais la porte était fermée à clef. 9. Que gagnerez-vous à le faire? 10. Êtes-vous disposé (*or* disposés) à accepter notre offre? 11. Il est temps de rentrer, notre mère nous attend. 12. Il se mit (*or* il commença) à pleuvoir à verse et nous fûmes obligés de rester à la maison. 13. Il me tarde de les voir. 14. Allez chercher le médecin, l'enfant paraît (*or* semble) être très malade. 15. Nous avons décidé de passer nos vacances au bord de la mer. 16. Il aurait oublié de vous inviter s'il ne vous avait pas vu (*or* vus). 17. Veuillez arriver plus tôt (*or* de meilleure heure) à l'avenir. 18. Il n'y a pas beaucoup de maisons à vendre dans cette localité. 19. Il serait le dernier à vous blâmer. 20. Il est difficile de réussir sans amis ou sans argent. 21. Voulez-vous me prêter ce que je vous ai demandé. 22. Nous regrettons d'avoir perdu une si bonne occasion. 23. Je vous défends de quitter la maison sans ma permission. 24. Ne vous ai-je pas dit de desservir? 25. Ils n'osent pas sortir, ils sont fatigués de rencontrer ces hommes.

### EXERCICE XXXI.

(*Must, Ought, Could, Might, Can, &c.; §§ 169-174, pp. 95-96.*)

1. Je voudrais connaître ce monsieur, présentez-moi à lui. 2. Il ne devrait pas être en retard. 3. Si je pouvais le faire, je n'hésiterais pas. 4. Cet enfant sait-il (*or, if referring to a girl,* Cette enfant sait-elle) lire? 5. Il vient de sortir, voulez-vous repasser? Je

dois (*or* j'ai à) repasser cet (*or* cette) après-midi. 6. La moindre erreur pourrait causer beaucoup de peine. 7. J'ai dû l'intéresser dans notre entreprise. 8. Vous n'auriez pas dû les prévenir, ils ne le méritaient pas. 9. Vous auriez pu agir en son absence, maintenant il est trop tard. 10. Ils ont dû vous dire pourquoi nous n'avons pas accepté leurs conditions. 11. S'il vient à s'éveiller, appelez-moi. 12. Je dois accompagner ma sœur à une soirée, ne m'attendez pas. 13. Ils venaient de dîner quand nous arrivâmes (*or* sommes arrivés). 14. Ils voudraient bien vous obliger, mais ils sont si pauvres eux-mêmes. 15. Vous auriez dû envoyer vos bagages d'avance.

### EXERCICE XXXII.

(*Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions*; §§175-194, pp. 97-102.)

1. Vous le ferez pour me plaire, n'est-ce pas? 2. Pourquoi le navire se dirige-t-il vers cette île? 3. Les associés commenceront par préparer un contrat. 4. Ils marchaient très lentement, ils paraissaient (*or* ils avaient l'air) très fatigués. 5. Répondez brièvement à mes questions. 6. Il m'écouta (*or* m'a écouté) très attentivement. 7. Nous avons agi aveuglément, malgré son avis. 8. Après l'avoir lu soigneusement il me le rendit. 9. Je viens de les quitter, mais non sans les gronder. 10. Je sais de quoi vous parlez, dit-il gaîment (*or* gaiement). 11. N'y avait-il pas vingt personnes sans compter les enfants? Si, il y en avait au moins trente. 12. Parlez-vous français couramment? Non, je n'ai jamais habité en (*or* la) France. 13. Quand ils quittèrent ce pays-ci, ils allèrent en Amérique (*or* Quand ils ont quitté...ils sont allés...).

14. Nous remarquâmes (*or* Nous nous aperçûmes) tout à coup que le train s'était arrêté. 15. Elle reviendra bientôt du Pays de Galles, elle était ici récemment. 16. En partant à deux heures et demie, vous arriverez de bonne heure. 17. Nous pouvions voir sans être vus. 18. Agissez prudemment. 19. Nous les connaissions il y a bien des années, nous les avons perdus de vue. 20. Je serai à Bruxelles quand vous serez à Genève. 21. Ils sont énormément riches, avez-vous jamais été chez eux? 22. S'il n'est pas ici vers deux heures, j'irai au-devant de lui (*or* le rencontrer). 23. Je l'ai cherché partout. 24. Je suis fatigué de répéter toujours la même chose. 25. Par quelle rue êtes-vous venu (*or* venus)?

#### TO THE STUDENT.

The names of a number of works which will be of great assistance in further pursuing the study of French will be found on the second page of the cover of this volume, or in the Catalogue bound up with it.

If a knowledge of Commercial French is desired, Marlborough's *French and English Commercial Correspondence* and *French Technical Words and Phrases*, will be found useful. (See Catalogue, or page 3 of cover).

# **COMPANION VOLUMES:—**

**PRICES NET.**

## **ITALIAN GRAMMAR SELF-TAUGHT.**

**Crown Svo. Blue Wrapper, 1s. 3d.  
Red Cloth, 2/-.**

By A. C. PANAGULLI (London School of Italian). Containing Alphabet, Accent, &c., Rules of Grammar exemplified with Model Sentences, Auxiliary Verbs, Tables of the four Conjugations, Irregular Verbs, Exercises, Alphabetical Vocabulary.

## **KEY to Italian Grammar Self-Taught.**

**Crown Svo. Blue wrapper 7d.**

## **ITALIAN SELF-TAUGHT and GRAMMAR with KEY.**

**Crown Svo.  
Green cloth 4/-.**

Three books bound in one volume.

## **ITALIAN BY HOME STUDY.**

**Crown Svo. Blue wrapper 3/-.  
(Banded together.)**

Contains Italian Self-Taught, Grammar and Key to the Exercises.

## **Marlborough's TRAVELLERS' PRACTICAL MANUALS**

### **OF CONVERSATION.**

**Crown 12mo. Round corners.  
Wrapper 1s. 3d. each, cloth 2s. each.**

**(SUBJECTS ARRANGED ALPHABETICALLY.)**

Containing Travel Notes, Classified Conversations—Railway, Steamer, Hotel, Luggage, Customs, Shopping, Sight-seeing, Motoring, Cycling, &c., Money, Weights and Measures. Comprehensive Dictionary of Words in Daily Use.

- No. 1.—ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN and ITALIAN. *(In one book.)*  
 No. 2.—ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN and DUTCH. *(In one book.)*

## **Marlborough's ITALIAN AND ENGLISH**

**Demy Svo. Fawn  
Wrapper 1s. 3d. Cloth 2/-.**

### **COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENCE.**

(Marlborough's Series of English and Foreign Commercial Correspondence.) By E. S. ROMERO-TODESCO and W. CHEVOB-MAURICE, A.I.L, London. Containing Model Phrases and Letters, Enquiries relating to Goods, Offers of Goods, Orders and their Execution, Shipping Correspondence, Agencies, Situations, Financial Credit, Insurance of Goods, Finance, Market Reports with Phrases, Announcements, Letters of Introduction, Commercial Terms and Abbreviations, Tables of Money with English and American Equivalents. Weights and Measures, &c.

## **ITALIAN WASHING BOOK.**

*(Marlborough's Series of Foreign Washing Books.)*  
**Demy Svo. Dark red wrapper 6d.**

For Ladies and Gentlemen. With English and Italian Counterfoils alphabetically arranged.

## **L'INGLESE IMPARATO DA SÈ.**

**Edizione Seconda. Prezzi:  
Copertina rossa 1s. 3d. o L1.60 ;  
in tela 2/- o L2.50.**

*(English Self-Taught for Italians.) Con la pronuncia fonetica.*

Redatto da G. DALLA VECCHIA. Contenente:—Vocabolari, Parole e Frasi di Conversazione, La Grammatica Inglese, Termini Commerciali e Religiosi, Frasario per Viaggio, Velocipede, Automobile, Fotografia, Divertimenti, Illustrazione della Moneta Inglese, Monete Pesi e Misure, ecc., ecc.

## **LATIN SELF-TAUGHT.**

*(Thimm's System.)* **Crown Svo. Blue wrapper. 1s. 3d.**

**Red cloth, 2/-.**

By J. TOPHAM (Barrister-at-Law). For learning the language by the natural method. With Phonetic Pronunciation. Containing Classified Vocabularies, Numerals, Medical, Prescriptive, Dispensing, Legal and Religious Terms and Phrases, Quotations, Inscriptions, Mottoes, Proverbs, etc., etc., Grammar, Construing, Abbreviations (Degrees, Titles, Distinctions, etc.).

London: E. MARLBOROUGH & Co., Publishers, 51, Old Bailey, E.C. 4.